EMERSON

Original Instructions
1019570 - REV. 02

2000 X energy
Power Supply

Operating Manual

Branson Ultrasonics Corp.
120 Park Ridge Road
Brookfield, CT 06804
(203) 796-0400
http://www.bransonultrasonics.com

BRANSON

Manual Change Information

At Branson, we strive to maintain our position as the leader in ultrasonics plastics joining, cleaning and related technologies by continually improving our circuits and components in our equipment. These improvements are incorporated as soon as they are developed and thoroughly tested.

Information concerning any improvements will be added to the appropriate technical documentation at its next revision and printing. Therefore, when requesting service assistance for specific units, note the Revision information found on this document, refer to the printing date which appears on this page, and refer to Appendix D: Manual Revisions to see the appropriate revision of manual you need according to the manufacturing date of your Power Supply.

Copyright

Foreword

Congratulations on your choice of a Branson Ultrasonics Corporation system!

The Branson 2000-Series system is process equipment for the joining of plastic parts using ultrasonic energy. It is the newest generation of product using this sophisticated technology for a variety of customer applications. This Operating Manual is part of the documentation set for this system, and should be kept with the equipment.

Thank you for choosing Branson!

Introduction

This manual is arranged into several structured chapters which will help you find the information you may need to know to safely handle, install, set up, program, operate, and/or maintain this product. Please refer to the Table of Contents and/or the Index of this manual to find the information you may be looking for. In the event you require additional assistance or information, please contact our Product Support department (see 1.4 How to Contact Branson for information on how to contact them) or your local Branson representative.

Table of Contents

List of Figures

List of Tables

Chapter 7: Maintenance

Appendix A: Compatible Printers

Appendix B: Automation

Appendix C: Alarm Index

Appendix D: Manual Revisions

Chapter 1: Safety and Support

This chapter contains an explanation of the different Safety Notice symbols and icons found both in this manual and on the product itself and provides additional safety information for ultrasonic welding. This chapter also describes how to contact Branson for assistance.

1.1 Safety Requirements and Warnings

1.1.1 Symbols found in this Manual

These symbols used throughout the manual warrant special attention:

WARNING	Indicates a possible danger
	If these risks are not avoided, death or severe injury might result.

CAUTION	Indicates a possible danger
	If these risks are not avoided, slight or minor injury might result.

NOTICE	Indicates a possible damaging situation
	If this situation is not avoided, the system or something in its vicinity might get damaged. Application types and other important or useful information are emphasized.

1.1.2 Symbols found on the Product

The 2000X energy Power Supply has several warning labels on it to indicate the presence of hazardous voltages inside the unit.

1.2 General Precautions

Take the following precautions before servicing the power supply:

- Be sure the power switch is in the Off position before making any electrical connections.
- To prevent the possibility of an electrical shock, always plug the power supply into a grounded power source.
- Power supplies produce high voltage. Before working on the power supply module, do the following:
  - Turn off the power supply;
  - Unplug main power; and
  - Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitors to discharge
- High voltage is present in the power supply. Do not operate with the cover removed
- High line voltages exist in the ultrasonic power supply module. Common points are tied to circuit reference, not chassis ground. Therefore, use only non-grounded, battery-powered multimeters when testing these modules. Using other types of test equipment can present a shock hazard
- Be sure power is disconnected from the power supply before setting a DIP switch
- Keep hands from under the horn. Down force (pressure) and ultrasonic vibrations can cause injury
- Do not cycle the welding system if either the RF cable or converter is disconnected
- When using larger horns, avoid situations where fingers could be pinched between the horn and the fixture

CAUTION	
	Sound level and frequency of the noise emitted during the ultrasonic assembly process may depend upon **a.** type of application, **b.** size, shape and composition of the material being assembled, **c.** shape and material of the holding fixture, **d.** welder setup parameters and **e.** tool design. Some parts vibrate at an audible frequency during the process. Some or all of these factors may result in an uncomfortable noise being emitted during the process. In such cases operators may need to be provided with personal protective equipment. See 29 CFR (Code of Federal Regulations) 1910.95 Occupational Noise Exposure.

CAUTION	
	First aid measures (in case of electrolyte leakage from the battery): **Eye Contact:** Flush the eyes with plenty of clean water for at least 15 minutes immediately, without rubbing. Get immediate medical treatment. If appropriate procedures are not taken, this may cause eye injury. **Skin Contact:** Wash the affected area under tepid running water using a mild soap. If appropriates procedures are not taken, this may cause sores on the skin. Get medical attention if irritation develops or persists. **Inhalation:** Remove to fresh air immediately. Get medical treatment immediately.

1.2.1 Intended Use of the System

The 2000X Power Supply and Actuator are components of an ultrasonic welding system. These are designed for a wide variety of welding or processing applications.

1.2.2 Emissions

When being processed, certain plastic materials can emit toxic fumes and/or gases hazardous to user health. Where such materials are processed, proper ventilation of the workstation is required. Check with your materials suppliers for recommended protection when processing their materials. See 29 CFR (Code of Federal Regulations) 1910.134, Respiratory protection.

CAUTION	
	Processing of many materials, such as PVC, can be hazardous to an operator's health and could cause corrosion/damage to the equipment. Use proper ventilation and take protective measures.

1.2.3 Setting up the Workplace

Measures for setting up a workplace for safe operation of the ultrasonic welder are outlined in Chapter 4: Installation and Setup and in the 2000 Series *Installation Guide*.

1.2.4 Regulatory Compliance

The Branson 2000X Series products (Power Supply and Actuator/Stand and Welder) are designed to be in compliance with the following U.S. regulatory and agency guidelines and standards:

All 20, 30, and 40 kHz products:

- ANSI Z535.1 Safety Color Code
- ANSI Z535.3 Criteria for Safety Symbols
- ANSI Z535.4 Product Safety Signs and Labels
- NFPA 70 National Electric Code Article 670 Industrial Machinery
- NFPA 79 Electrical Standard for Industrial Machinery
- 29 CFR 1910.212 OSHA General Requirements for all machines
- 47 CFR Part 18 Federal Communications Commission
- BS EN ISO 12100-1, 2 Safety of Machinery - Basic concepts, general principles for design
- EN 55011 Limits and methods of measurement of radio disturbance of industrial, scientific and medical radio-frequency equipment
- EN 60204-1 Safety of Machinery - Electrical Equipment of machines
- EN 61000-6-2 Electromagnetic Compatibility - Generic standards - Immunity for industrial environments
- EN 61310-1, 2 Safety of Machinery - Indication, marking, actuation
- EN 60529 Degrees of protection provided by enclosure
- EN 60664-1 Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems

40 kHz products with CE Mark: Same as above plus:

- EN 61000-3-2 Electromagnetic Compatibility - Limits for harmonic emissions (for European products that draw less than 1000 watts from the line at full rated power)
- EN 61000-3-3 Electromagnetic Compatibility - Limitations of voltage fluctuations and flicker in low voltage supply systems (for European products that draw less than 1000 watts from the line at full rated power)

Figure 1.1 CE Mark

CE

1.2.5 Compliance with Safety Standards

Products: 2000X Series Power Supply and Actuator/Stand

A standard 2000X Series Power Supply when connected to a 2000 Series Stand with dual start switches and an emergency stop switch (mounted in the Base) is in compliance with the following OSHA requirements:

29 CFR Chapter XVII - Occupational Safety and Health Administration - Subpart O - Machinery and Machine Guarding - Section 1910.212 General requirements for all machines Subsection (a) Machine guarding.

When it is operated in this configuration it provides Point of operation guarding specified in 1910.212 (a) (3) by using two hand tripping devices and electronic safety devices specified in 1910.212 (a) (1) Types of guarding.

In accordance with 29 CFR 1910.212 (a) (3) (ii) and Directive 2006/42/EC of the European Parliament, the electronic controller located in 2000X Power Supply has been designed in accordance with the requirements of:

NFPA 79 Electrical Standard for Industrial Machinery 2002 Edition EN ISO 121000-1, -2 Safety of machinery - Basic concepts, general principles for design EN 954 Safety related parts of control systems (Category 3), ISO 13851 Two-hand control devices (Type IIIB), EN 60204-1 Electrical equipment of machines (Type III).

These standards require concurrent actuation of the two control devices (start switches) by both hands (within a specified time) during the hazardous condition. Machine operation ceases upon release of either one or both of the control devices when the hazardous condition is still present. Both control devices must be released before operation can be re-initiated.

If the 2000 Series Actuator or Stand is not used with dual start switches, mounted in a Series 2000 Base, then it may not be in compliance with OSHA and European requirements unless some other means of safety actuation or guarding has been provided.

An additional requirement of Section 10-910.212 (b) is that the machine must be securely anchored to prevent walking or moving.

1.3 Warranty Statement, Disclaimer

The following excerpts from the "Terms and Conditions of Sale" (found on the back of your Invoice) are essential guidelines for the product Warranty issued with your Branson ultrasonic welding components. The items listed in this section specifically address issues involving the delivery, shipment, and warranty period provided. If you have any questions, please refer to the back of the Invoice included with your system, which lists all of the Terms and Conditions of Sale, or contact your Branson representative.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF SALE

Branson Ultrasonics Corporation is herein referred to as the "Seller" and the customer or person or entity purchasing products ("Products") from Seller is referred to as the "Buyer". Buyer's acceptance of the Products will manifest Buyer's assent to these Terms and Conditions.

ULTRASONIC JOINING EQUIPMENT NORTH AMERICAN WARRANTY POLICY

Each product manufactured by Branson is guaranteed to be free from *defects in material and workmanship* for a period of time specified in Table 1.1 Warranty Period from the date of invoice.

Table 1.1 Warranty Period

Product	Warranty Period
Power Supplies	36 months
Actuators	36 months
Integrated Welders	36 months
Accessories	36 months
Converters	36 months (limited to *one-time* replacement)
Non-Branson equipment (i.e. printers)	warranted by the manufacturer
Horns	12 months (limited to *one-time* replacement)
Boosters	36 months
Rental Equipment	Same as purchased equipment
Hand Guns	12 months
Specials and products with EDP prefix 159-xxx-xxx	12 months
Specials and products with EDP prefix 125-xxx-xxx	12 months

The warranty does *not* apply to:

- Any product which has been subject to misuse, misapplication, neglect (including without limitation inadequate maintenance), accident or improper installation, modification or adjustment
- Applications requiring metal-to-metal contact when the ultrasonic exposure time exceeds 1.5 seconds
- Any product exposed to adverse environments, improper repair or repairs using non-Branson methods or material
- Non-Branson equipment (i.e., horns, boosters, converters) or improperly tuned horns
- Set up/installation of equipment and software updates

Warranty Service covers the following:

Repair service at Branson's main repair facility or a regional office

- Includes parts and labor performed at Branson authorized repair facilities. The customer must return the equipment properly packed with all shipping charges prepaid

Repair service at the customer site:

- Includes parts and labor at the customer site performed by a Branson technician. The customer is responsible for all travel-related charges

Module trade-in:

- Includes serialized components for work performed by the customer. The customer orders the replacement components from the Parts Store and issues a P.O. When the failed components are returned to Branson the warranty status is verified and a credit is issued. The customer is responsible for all shipping charges

Additional Warranty Notes:

- Components replaced during in-warranty repair carries the remainder of the original warranty
- Serialized assemblies replaced during the repair of out-of-warranty equipment are warranted for a period of 12 months
- Travel charges for Branson service personnel will be waived on service calls performed within 30 days of invoice date
- Non-serialized parts replaced during the repair of out-of-warranty equipment are warranted for 3 months
- Trade in allowance: Branson out-of-warranty serialized components are entitled to a 25% trade in allowance regardless of age or condition, however, converters must be less than 5 years old to qualify for the trade in

If you have any questions concerning the warranty coverage (including coverage outside of North America), please contact your Branson representative or Branson Customer Support.

1.4 How to Contact Branson

Branson is here to help you. We appreciate your business and are interested in helping you successfully use our products. To contact Branson for help, use the following telephone numbers, or contact the field office nearest you.

- **Brookfield Main Number (all Departments):** (203) 796-0400 (Eastern Time Zone)
- **Parts Store (direct number):** (877) 330-0406 (Central Time Zone)
- **Repair department:** (877)-330-0405 (Central Time Zone)
- **For emergency after-hours service (5pm-8am Est):** (203) 796-0500 (US phone numbers only)

Tell the operator which product you have and which person or department you need (Table 1.2: Branson Contacts). If after hours, please leave a voice message with your name and return telephone number.

1.4.1 Before Calling Branson for Assistance

This manual provides information for troubleshooting and resolving problems that could occur with the equipment (see Chapter 7: Maintenance). If you still require assistance, Branson Product Support is here to help you. To help identify the problem, use the following questionnaire which lists the common questions you will be asked when you contact the Product Support department.

Before calling, determine the following information:

1. Your company name and location.
2. Your return telephone number.
3. Have your manual with you. If troubleshooting a problem, refer to Chapter 7: Maintenance.
4. Know your equipment model and serial numbers (found on a gray data label on the units). Information about the Horn (part number, gain, etc.) or other tooling may be etched into the tooling. Software- or firmware-based systems may provide a BOS or software version number, which may be required.
5. What tooling (horn) and booster are being used?
6. What are the setup parameters and mode?
7. Is your equipment in an automated system? If so, what is supplying the “start” signal?
8. Describe the problem; provide as much detail as possible. For example, is the problem intermittent? How often does it occur? How long before it occurs if you are just powering up? If an error is occurring, which error (give error number or name)?
9. List the steps you have already taken.
10. What is your application, including the materials being processed?
11. Have a list of service or spare parts you have on hand (tips, horns, etc.)
12. Notes:_____

    _____

    _____

1.5 Returning Equipment for Repair

Before sending equipment for repair, provide as much information with the equipment to help determine the problem with the system. Fill in any details below or on a separate sheet.

Describe the problem; provide as much detail as possible. For example, is this a new problem? Is the problem intermittent? How often does it occur? How long before it occurs if you are just powering up?

NOTICE	
	To return equipment to Branson, you must first obtain an **RGA number** from a Branson representative, or the shipment may be delayed or refused.

If you are returning equipment to Branson for repair, you must first call the Repair department to obtain a **Returned Goods Authorization** (**RGA**) number. (If you request it, the repair department will fax a Returned Goods Authorization form to fill out and return with your equipment.)

Branson Repair Department, C/O Zuniga Logistics, LTD
12013 Sara Road, Killam Industrial Park
Laredo, Texas 78045 U.S.A.
direct telephone number: (877) 330-0405
fax number: (877) 330-0404

- Provide as much information as possible that will help identify the need for repair
- Carefully pack the equipment in original packing cartons
- Clearly label all shipping cartons with the RGA number on the outside of cartons as well as on your packing slip, along with the reason for return
- Return general repairs by any convenient method. Send priority repairs by air freight
- You must prepay the transportation charges FOB Laredo, Texas, U.S.A.

1.5.1 Get an RGA Number

RGA# _____

If you are returning equipment to Branson, please call the Repair Department to obtain a Returned Goods Authorization (RGA) number. (At your request, the Repair Department will fax an RGA form to fill out and return with the equipment.)

1.5.2 Record information about the Problem

Before sending equipment for repair, record the following information and send a copy of it with the equipment. This will greatly increase Branson's ability to address the problem.

1. Describe the problem; provide as much detail as possible.
   For example, is the problem intermittent? How often does it occur? How long before it occurs after powering up?

_____
_____
_____
_____

2. Is your equipment in an automated system? NO / YES

3. If the problem is with an external signal, which signal? _____

If known, include plug/pin # (e.g., P29, pin #3) for that signal: _____

4. What are the Weld Parameters?

_____

_____

5. What is your application? (Type of weld, plastic material, etc.)

_____

6. Name and phone number of the person most familiar with the problem:

_____

_____

7. Contact the Branson office prior to shipping the equipment.
8. For equipment not covered by warranty, to avoid delay, include a Purchase Order.

Send a copy of this page with the equipment being returned for repair.

1.5.3 Departments to Contact

Call your local Branson Representative, or contact Branson by calling, and asking for the appropriate department as indicated in Table 1.2 Branson Contacts below.

Table 1.2 Branson Contacts

What you need help with or information about	Whom to Call	At this Phone Number
Information about new welding systems or components	Your local Branson Rep or Branson Customer Service	203-796-0400 Ext 384
Application and Setup questions on the welding system	Welding Applications Lab	203-796-0400 Ext 368
Application assistance on the Horns and Tooling	ATG Lab	203-796-0400 Ext 495
Technical questions about the welding system	Welding Product Support	203-796-0400 Ext 355
Technical questions about Horns and Tooling	ATG Lab	203-796-0400 Ext 495
Ordering new parts	Parts Store	877-330-0406
RGA's, Request for Repair, Status of a Repair	Welding Repair Department	877-330-0405
System Automation/Hookup Information	Product Support	203-796-0400 Ext 355

My Local Branson Representative's name is:

_____

I can reach this representative at:

_____

1.5.4 Pack and Ship the Equipment

1. Carefully pack the system in original packing material to avoid shipping damage. Plainly show the RGA number on the outside of cartons as well as inside the carton along with the reason for return. Make a list of all components packed in the box. KEEP YOUR MANUAL.
2. Return general repairs by any convenient method. Send priority repairs by air freight. Prepay the transportation charges FOB the repair site.

NOTICE	
	Items that are sent Freight Collect will be refused.

1.6 Obtaining Replacement Parts

You can reach Branson Parts Store at the following telephone numbers:

Branson Part Store
direct telephone number: 877-330-0406
fax number: 877-330-0404

Many parts can be shipped the same day if ordered before 2:30 p.m., Eastern time.

A parts list is found in Chapter 7: Maintenance of this manual, listing descriptions and EDP part numbers. If you need replacement parts, coordinate the following with your purchasing agent:

- Purchase order number
- 'Ship to' information
- 'Bill to' information
- Shipping instructions (air freight, truck, etc.)
- Any special instructions (for example, "Hold at the airport and call"). Be sure to give a name and phone number
- Contact name information

Chapter 2: The 2000X energy Power Supply

This manual provides detailed instructions for installation, setup, operation, and maintenance of 2000X Power Supply. For detailed information on operation and maintenance of other components connected to the Power Supply, refer to appropriate Actuator instruction manual.

This Power Supply contains a microprocessor-based controller that provides for control and monitoring of welding operations.

2.1 Models Covered

This manual covers the 2000X Power Supply with the digital UPS configuration. See Appendix D: Manual Revisions for information on models covered with this manual.

2.1.1 Power Supply Manual and Guides

The following documentation is available for the Branson 2000X Power Supply:

- 2000 X ea Instruction Manual (EDP 1019570)
- 2000-Series System Installation Guide (EDP 100-214-226)
- 2000 X ea Quick Start User's Guide (EDP 100-412-169)

2.1.2 Actuator Manuals

The following documentation is available for the Branson Actuators compatible with this power supply:

- 2000-Series System Installation Guide (EDP 100-214-226)
- 2000 X ae Actuator Instruction Manual (EDP 1019571)

2.2 Overview of these Models

The 2000X generates ultrasonic electrical energy through an ultrasonic converter for welding plastics. Several models are available, depending on the desired frequency (for example, 20 kHz) or the desired power range (for example, 2.5 kW). The Power Supply also contains a microprocessor-based controller module that provides for control and monitoring of welding operations.

The Power Supply provides the following features:

- AutoTune with Memory (AT/M) — Allows the Power Supply to track and store the horn frequency of the last weld
- Auto Seek — Tracks and starts the horn on the correct frequency. It does this by running the horn at a low-level amplitude (5%) to find and lock on to the horn operating frequency
- Line Regulation — Maintains converter amplitude by regulating for variances in the line voltages.
- Load Regulation — Maintains converter amplitude over the full range of rated power
- System Protection Monitor — Protects the Power Supply by providing five levels of protection
    1. Voltage
    2. Current
    3. Phase
    4. Temperature
    5. Power
- Select Start — Provides four starting ranges. Select Start in the Analog UPS allows the Power Supply to ramp up amplitude at four different rates to accommodate different horn and load requirements. Select Start in the Digital UPS allows Memory and Timed Seek to be turned on or off, and allows a range of time values to be input for Ramp Time(s) and Seek Time(s)
- Frequency Offset — Provides for applying an external frequency offset to the operating frequency

2.3 Compatibility with Branson Products

The 2000X Power Supply is designed to be used with:

- 2000ae Actuator (Actuator alone, or Actuator Stand on a Base or on a Hub)

Table 2.1 Power Supply Compatibility with Branson Converters

2000X energy Model	Converter
20 kHz/1250 W 20 kHz/2500 W 20 kHz/4000 W	CJ20 CR20
30 kHz/750 W 30 kHz/1500 W	CJ30 CR30 CH30
40 kHz/400 W 40 kHz/800 W	4TH 4TJ 4TP 4TR

2.4 Features

2.4.1 The Welding System

The welding system consists of a Power Supply and a converter-booster-horn stack. The system can perform ultrasonic welding, inserting, staking, spot welding, swaging, degating, and continuous ultrasonic operations. It is designed for automated, semi-automated and/or manual production operations.

Listed below are the control features of the Branson 2000-series ultrasonic welding system.

- **1 Millisecond Control and Sampling Rate:** This feature provides sampling and control of the weld process 1000 times each second
- **16 Presets:** User-configurable setups that can be preset allowing you to simply recall a weld setup to start production
- **19" Rack Mount Enclosure:** Compatible with industry standard 19" rack enclosure systems. Rack mount handles are available as an optional kit
- **Adjust While Running:** The 2000X allows you to modify the weld parameters while the welder is running. This can be of benefit in automated systems where you do not want to shut down the entire line to make a minor modification
- **Afterburst:** This feature allows you to turn on the ultrasonics after the weld and hold steps to reliably release parts from the horn
- **Alarms, Process:** These are set values used for part quality monitoring
- **Amplitude Stepping:** A Patented Branson Process. At a specified time, energy, peak power, distance, or by external signal you can change the amplitude during the weld to control the flow of plastic. This feature helps ensure part consistency, higher strength parts, and control of flash
- **Automatic Preset Naming:** If you choose not to name your preset, the Power Supply will give it a name that describes the weld mode and main parameter setting
- **Autotuning:** Ensures that the welder is running at peak efficiency
- **Cycle Aborts:** These are user programmed conditions (missing part and ground detect) at which the cycle is terminated. These can be used as safety limits to save wear and tear on the system and your tooling
- **Cycle Time and Date Stamp:** The Power Supply provides each cycle with a time and date stamp for production and quality control purposes. Clock is year 2000 and leap year compliant
- **Digital Amplitude Setting:** This feature allows you to set the exact amplitude necessary for your application, affording increased range and setting repeatability over analog systems
- **Digital Tuning:** Means to tune the Power Supply for applications and horns at the extremes of the Power Supply capture range
- **Digital UPS:** The Digital UPS has programmable (through a digital interface from a system controller) features which allow true autotune and start ramp during set-up. Power supply presets can be customized
- **Downspeed**: Sets the advance speed of the horn towards the workpiece
- **English (USCS)/Metric Units:** This feature allows the welder to be programmed in the local units in use
- **Foreign Languages:** Software supports user selectable languages at start up; English, French, German, Italian and Spanish
- **Frequency Offset:** This feature provides a user-set frequency value used in very limited applications where the fixture or anvil causes a frequency shift in the Power Supply's operation. This feature should be used only when advised by Branson
- **Graphs, Auto-Scaling:** When you request a graphic printout in Time Mode, the Power Supply automatically scales the time axis of the graph to give you the most meaningful graph possible

- **Graphs, Printing of Power, Amplitude, Frequency, and Horn Scan for DUPS:** The 2000X supports graphic printouts of these items. These graphs include markers to show critical points in the weld. Use these graphs to optimize your weld process or diagnose application problems
- **Graphs, User Selectable:** In any mode you can select the scale of the time axis on any graph so that you can zoom in on the start of the weld cycle
- **Hold Force:** Force applied to the workpiece while ultrasonic vibrations are removed
- **Horn Down:** Clamp On: When in the horn down mode, the start switches can be released after the part is contacted while the part remains clamped in place. Press horn down key again to release. Clamp Off: The horn will retract whenever the start switches are released in the horn down mode
- **Horn Down Display:** During Horn Down, the absolute Distance, Force, Velocity, and Pressure are displayed digitally so that you can determine correct values for process limits and cutoffs
- **Horn Down Mode:** A manual procedure used to verify system setup and alignment
- **Horn Scan:** A scan to enhance selection of operating frequency and control parameters. This feature is available in the DUPS only
- **Limits, Control:** These are controls that are used in conjunction with the main weld mode. These user programmed limits provide for additional control of the weld process
- **Limits, Reject:** A class of user-definable process alarms that alert you if a part falls into a range that you classified as reject parts
- **Limits, Suspect:** A class of user-definable process alarms that alert you if a part falls into a range that you have determined should be inspected
- **Memory:** When Memory is turned on, weld parameters at the end of the cycle will be entered
- **Membrane Keyboard:** For high reliability and immunity from factory dust and oils
- **Parallel Port:** The parallel port supports printers
- **Parameter Entry through Keypad:** A keypad is provided for direct entry. The Plus (+) and Minus (-) keys are provided for adjusting existing values
- **Parameter Range Checking:** If you enter an invalid parameter the Power Supply shows you the valid range
- **Password Protection:** This feature allows you to secure your setup from unauthorized changes. You can select your own password
- **Presets:** The UPS is capable of storing up to 12 presets of power supply operating parameters depending on feature level and type of UPS
- **Pretrigger:** This feature allows you to turn on the ultrasonics before contact with the part to increase performance
- **Print, Background:** This feature allows you to print the results of the previous cycle while performing a new cycle
- **Print, Data:** Prints one line of data depicting weld results
- **Print, Now:** At any time you can request any printable items for the last cycle completed
- **Print, on Alarm:** You can request any printable item whenever an alarm occurs. This gives you the information you need to determine how your setup or limits can be changed
- **Print, on Sample:** You can request any printable items based on a sampling rate. This facilitates auditing your process and lot control
- **Printing, Weld History:** At any time you can print all of the weld parameters from the last 50 cycles completed using your current setup
- **Rapid Traverse:** Allows a high horn travel speed for a portion of the stroke. Once the set distance is reached, travel speed is reduced to the downspeed setting
- **Ramp Starting:** The starting of the Power Supply and horn is done at the optimum rate to reduce electrical and mechanical stress on the system
- **Seek, Post Weld:** This feature provides a Seek at the end of the cycle to automatically retune the Power Supply

- **Seek:** Ensures operation at resonance; minimizes tuning errors; and operates the stack at low amplitude (approximately 5%), then provides a means of sensing and storing the resonant operating frequency value
- **Setup Checking:** If you create a setup with conflicts the Power Supply notifies you of the specific conflict
- **Short Cut to Modify Main Parameters:** From the Run Screen you can jump to a screen to make modifications to your main parameters. This simplifies minor adjustments
- **Start-up Diagnostics:** At start-up, the controls test the major system components
- **System Information Screen:** This is a screen that will give you information about your welding system. Refer to this screen when contacting Branson for service and support
- **Test Diagnostics:** In Test mode you can view the ultrasonic system results using digital readouts and bar graphs
- **Timed Seek:** When turned ON, will do a Seek once every minute to update horn resonant frequency to memory. This is especially useful when the welding process affects the actual temperature of the horn, causing a resonant frequency shift
- **User-Nameable Presets:** You can refer to each preset by name or part number making identification of your presets simple
- **Vacuum Fluorescent Display:** For good visibility in factory lighting conditions
- **View Weld Results:** From the Run Screen you can view any of the information available from the last completed cycle
- **Weld Modes:** Time, Energy, Peak Power, and Ground Detect. The 2000X welder offers multiple weld modes so that you can choose the mode of control that best meets your specific application need

2.4.2 The Power Supply

The Power Supply consists of an ultrasonic Power Supply module and a system controller. The ultrasonic Power Supply module converts conventional 50/60 Hz line current to 15 kHz, 20 kHz, 30 kHz or 40 kHz electrical energy. The system controller controls the welding system.

The power supply is configured with either an analog or digital UPS. The analog supply has one preset which calls up the factory default setting.

The digital supply has a library of up to 18 locked presets which are accessible for various process parameter modifications that are unique to the power supply itself. These modifications can be named to reflect specific applications, and are loaded into memory prior to shipment from the Branson Factory. The parameters of the individual presets can be modified by a Branson representative. Initially, one preset is set to factory default. They are accessed via an RS232 link to the system controller.

2.4.3 The Actuator

The Actuator is an electro-pneumatic system that contains the Ultrasonic Stack (Converter/Booster/Horn) that delivers the force and ultrasonic energy to the workpiece. The pneumatics are enclosed in the upper half of the actuator.

The Converter

The converter is mounted in the actuator as part of the ultrasonic stack. The ultrasonic electrical energy from the power supply is applied to the converter (sometimes called the transducer). This transforms the high frequency electrical oscillations into mechanical vibrations at the same frequency as the electrical oscillations. The heart of the converter is piezoelectric ceramic elements. When subjected to an alternating voltage, these elements alternately expand and contract, resulting in better than 90% conversion of electrical to mechanical energy.

The Booster

Success in ultrasonic assembly depends on the right amplitude of movement at the horn face. Amplitude is a function of horn shape, which is largely determined by the size and form of the parts to be assembled. The booster can be used as a mechanical transformer to increase or decrease the amplitude of vibrations applied to the parts through the horn.

The booster is a resonant half-wave section of aluminum or titanium. It is mounted between the converter and the horn, as part of the ultrasonic stack. It also provides a clamping point for rigid stack mounting.

Boosters are designed to resonate at the same frequency as the converter with which they are used. Boosters are usually mounted at a nodal (minimum vibration) point of axial motion. This minimizes the loss of energy and prevents vibration from being transmitted into the actuator.

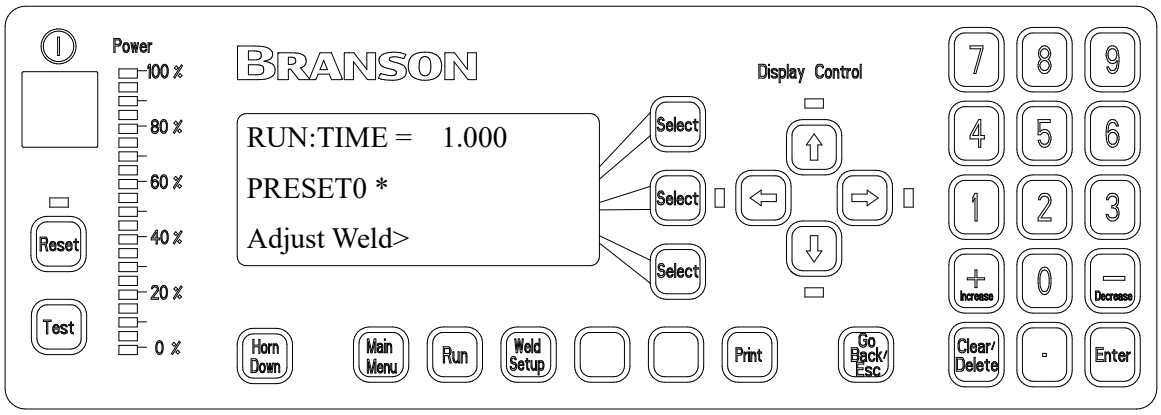
The Horn

The horn is selected or designed for a specific application. Each horn is tuned typically as a half-wave section that applies the necessary force and vibration uniformly to the parts to be assembled. It transfers ultrasonic vibrations from the converter to the workpiece. The horn is mounted to the booster as part of the ultrasonic stack.

Depending on their profile, horns are referred to as stepped, conical, exponential, bar, or catenoidal. The shape of the horn determines the amplitude at the face of the horn. Depending on the application, horns can be made from titanium alloys, aluminum, or steel. Titanium alloys are the best materials for horn fabrication due to their high level of strength and low loss. Aluminum horns are usually chrome- or nickel-plated or hard-coated to reduce wear. Steel horns are for low amplitude requiring hardness, such as ultrasonic insertion applications.

2.5 Front Panel Controls

Figure 2.1 2000X Power Supply Front Panel Display after Power-Up



- **Select Keys:** Each key is associated with a Menu Item line. Press a key to select a line of the menu
- Display Control keys and LEDs:
  - LEDs adjacent to each control key indicate "more item lines exist" in the direction of the arrow that is lit
  - Press the Up and Down arrow keys to scroll the menu page in increments of one line
  - Press the Left and Right arrow keys to scroll across an extended menu screen (for example, Weld Results)
- **Numeric Keypad:** Press to select values
- **Power Bar Graph:** Indicates the percentage of rated power delivered either during the last weld cycle or when Test is running. The indicator's scale can be increased for low-power settings
- **Power:** Press to turn the system On and Off. When you depress the button, it lights to indicate power is On
- **Reset:** Press to clear alarms. Reset only functions on the Run screen
- **Test:** Press to display a menu you can use to test the ultrasonic power supply, horn, booster, and converter
- **Horn Down:** Press to activate a menu for Horn Down and fixture alignment when the ultrasonics are Off. Menus guide you through the process
- **Print:** Press to display a menu of choices for printing and printer setup
- **Weld Setup:** Press to go to the Setup menu
- **Run:** Press to go to the Run screen
- **Main Menu:** Press to return to the Main Menu
- **Go Back/Esc:** Press to return the current menu page to the previous menu or sub-menu; when modifying a parameter, press this key to cancel editing and restore the parameter to its last saved value. Repeated pressing returns you to the Main Menu
- **+ Increase:** Press to increase a parameter value
- **– Decrease:** Press to decrease a parameter value
- **Enter:** Press Enter to accept a choice or to enter into memory the value of a parameter you have set
- **Clear/Delete:** Erases the selected value

2.6 Welding Systems

2.6.1 Principle of Operation

Thermoplastic parts are welded ultrasonically by applying high frequency vibrations to the parts being assembled. The vibrations, through surface and intermolecular friction, produce a sharp rise in temperature at the welding interface.

When the temperature is high enough to melt the plastic, there is a flow of material between the parts. When the vibrations stop, the material solidifies under pressure and a weld results.

Most plastics welders operate at a frequency above the range of human hearing (18 kHz) and are thus called ultrasonic.

2.6.2 Weld System Applications

2000X weld systems can be used for the following applications:

- Ultrasonic welding
- Cutting and sealing thermoplastic fabric and film
- Staking, spot welding, swaging, and degating thermoplastic parts
- Other ultrasonic processing applications

2.7 Glossary

The following terminology may be encountered when using or operating a 2000-series ultrasonic welding system. Some of these terms may not be available in all Controls (Power Supply model) configurations:

AB Amplitude: The amplitude at the horn face during the afterburst step.

AB Delay: Time delay between the end of the hold and the start of afterburst.

AB Time: The time duration of the afterburst.

Abort Current Printing: Terminates the current printing request.

Absolute Cutoff: Ends the ultrasonic portion of the cycle when the set parameter is reached.

Absolute Distance: The distance the horn has travelled from home.

Absolute Mode: A mode of operation in which the weld is terminated when a user-specified distance from the home position has been reached.

Absolute Position: The position of the Actuator from the home position.

Accept-as-is: A disposition permitted for a nonconforming item when it can be established that the item is satisfactory for its intended use without violating safety or functional requirements.

Actual: A reported value that occurred during the weld cycle. The converse is the set parameter that was requested during the setup.

Act Clr Output: Actuator Clear output signal, sent upon the welder reaching a safe position of the actuator return stroke. Used in automated systems.

Actuator: The unit that houses the converter, booster, and horn assembly in a rigid mounting allowing it to move up and down either mechanically or pneumatically to apply a predetermined pressure on the workpiece.

Adjust While Running: Allows modifications to weld parameters while the welder is running.

Afterburst: Ultrasonic energy applied after the hold step. Used to break away sticking parts from the tooling.

Alarm Beeper: An audible signal that sounds when a general alarm has occurred.

Amplitude: The peak-to-peak movement at the horn face. Always expressed as a percentage of the maximum.

Amp A: The amplitude applied to the part from the start of the weld to the step change.

Amp B: The amplitude applied to the part from the step change to the end of the weld.

Amplitude Graph: A graph of amplitude percentage plotted against time.

Amplitude Step: A change in amplitude during the ultrasonic portion of the cycle.

Amp Control: The ability to set amplitude digitally or by an external control.

Automatic: A pretrigger condition indicating that pretrigger engages when the actuator leaves the upper limit switch.

Baud Rate: The rate of data transmission over the serial communication port.

Beep: An audible signal produced by the Branson control board. Used to alert the operator to an unexpected condition or that trigger has been reached.

Booster: A one-half wavelength long resonant metal section mounted between the converter and horn, usually having a change in cross-sectional area between the input

and output surfaces. Mechanically alters the amplitude of vibration at the driving surface of the converter.

Cal Sensor: The menu title for accessing the calibration and verification of pressure and force.

Cal Actuator: Calibrate Actuator. Menus to guide the user through actuator calibration, including distance.

Clamping force: The pressure exerted by the horn on the workpiece.

Cold Start: A user operation to establish a setup to a new, initial minimum set of weld parameters. Found in the Diagnostics menu. *Warning*: Use carefully.

Collapse Distance: The vertical distance your part will be collapsed before termination of ultrasonics.

Collapse Distance Graph: A graph of collapse distance plotted against time.

Collapse Mode: A mode of operation in which the weld is terminated when the part has been collapsed by a user-specified distance.

Control Limits: An automatic weld energy compensation option. Normal weld parameters are automatically increased, up to user-defined control limits, if specified minimum weld parameters are not reached initially. Other control limit functions are Collapse Cutoff, Absolute Cutoff and Peak Power Cutoff.

Counters: A record of the number of cycles run by category, for example, alarms.

Cycle Aborts: Settings that end the cycle immediately.

Digital Filter: A smoothing technique used to provide more meaningful graph data.

Downspeed: The rate of speed of the actuator from the home position to the part.

Energy Compensation: Extend the weld time up to 50% greater than the weld time setting or whenever the minimum energy is reached, or shut off the weld before the expected (set) weld time if the maximum energy value is reached.

Energy Mode: A mode of operation in which ultrasonics are terminated at a user-specified energy value.

External Amplitude Control: Enables you to access real-time amplitude control directly.

External Frequency Control: Enables you to access real-time frequency control directly.

Extra Cooling: When On, allows cooling air to start when upper limit switch is triggered and remains on throughout the cycle. When Off, air is applied at ultrasonics application

F Actual: Actual Frequency. The operating frequency of the ultrasonic stack, as measured during a cycle.

F memory: Frequency as stored in Memory. The intended operating frequency value for an ultrasonic stack, stored in the memory of the power supply.

Form Feed: A form feed is inserted after print setup or print graph, or after the number of lines per page is reached.

Freq Chg: Frequency Change. (Frequency at Start versus Frequency at End).

Freq End: Frequency at End. Frequency at the time ultrasonics was turned off.

Freq Max: Maximum Frequency. Highest frequency reached during weld cycle.

Freq Min: Minimum frequency. Lowest frequency reached during weld cycle.

Freq Start: Frequency at Start. Frequency at the time ultrasonics was turned on.

Frequency Offset: An offset factor applied to the ultrasonic frequency output set in the power supply.

F Actual: The actual running frequency of the acoustic system.

F Memory: The frequency stored in the Power Supply memory.

General Alarm: An alarm that occurs due to a system fault and/or tripping a limit.

Ground Det. Cutoff: Immediately terminates the weld process, including the hold step, when a ground detect has occurred.

Ground Detect Mode: In this mode of operation, ultrasonics are terminated after detection of a ground condition between the horn and fixture or anvil.

Hold Force: The mechanical force on the part during the Hold portion of the weld cycle.

Hold Time: The duration of the hold step.

Horn Down: A mode in which ultrasonics are locked out and the user can advance the Actuator for setup and alignment.

Linear Encoder: Provides carriage distance measurement during the Actuator cycle.

X-Beam Load Cell: Provides force measurement for accurate ultrasonic triggering and graphing of force.

Main Menu: The list of categories of features available in the software.

Max Energy: The maximum user-specified energy that produces a part without an alarm. Used with energy compensation to turn off the weld in Time mode.

Min Energy: The minimum user-specified energy that produces a part without an alarm. Used with energy compensation to extend the weld to up to 50% of the weld time in Time mode.

Minus Limit: The user-defined lower limit - used with suspect and reject limits.

Missing Part: A min/max distance where trigger is expected. Returns the actuator to the home position and displays an alarm indicating that the cycle was aborted because no part was present.

Parameter range: Valid range of parameters accepted for a particular setup.

Password: A user-defined access code for entry into secure areas of the user software.

Password protection: Enables lock-out of weld parameter modification by using a user-defined password.

Peak Power Cutoff: A power value that terminates the ultrasonics when peak power is not the primary control mode.

Peak Power Mode: A mode of operation in which ultrasonics are terminated at a user-specified power value in percentage of maximum.

Peak Power: A weld mode in which obtaining a power value (percentage of full power) will cause the ultrasonic energy to terminate.

Pneumatic Air Prep: This is a panel that mounts the cutoff valve, the slow start valve, the regulator and the two filters that are normally located in the actuator. This panel is required for installations where the actuator is not positioned in a vertical plane, or is used without a Branson actuator support.

Post Weld Seek: A low level (5%) amplitude running of the Power Supply after hold or afterburst for the purpose of storing a frequency to memory.

Power Graph: A graph of power in percentage of maximum plotted against time.

Preset: User-stored parameters constituting a weld setup. Saved in non-volatile memory in the power supply, can be recalled for quick Setup of the system.

Preset name: The ability to name a preset in customer-defined terms.

Pretrigger: The setting that causes ultrasonics to start before contact with the part.

Pretrg Amp: The amplitude at the converter during pretrigger.

Pretrg @ D: The distance at which pretrigger is turned on.

Print Data/Graphs: Using the optional printer, shows a list of data reports and graphs that can be printed by the user.

Print on Alarm: Allows the user to set up printing automatically when an alarm occurs.

Print on Sample: Allows the user to set up printing automatically based on the number of cycles performed.

Rapid Traverse/RAPID TRAV: Allows fast actuator descent to a user-defined point, before the Downspeed value is applied for control during the stroke.

Ready Position: State in which the welder is retracted and ready to receive the start signal.

Recall Preset: Allows a user to recall a preset from memory for purposes of operation or modification.

Reject Limits: User-definable limits at which the violating cycle is identified as having produced a bad part.

Required: State used with limits indicating that a reset will be required when the limit is exceeded. The reset is accomplished by using the reset key on the front of the Power Supply, or by external reset at the User I/O.

Reset Required: State used with alarms indicating that a reset will be required before a cycle can be run. The reset is accomplished by using the reset key on the front of the Power Supply, or by external reset at the User I/O.

Run Screen: The screen showing weld status, alarms, weld count, and process information.

Save Preset: Stores a programmed set of weld parameters as a preset.

Scrub Time: The amount of time after detection of a ground condition to the termination of ultrasonics.

Seek: A setting where ultrasonics are on at 5% amplitude for the purpose of finding the resonant frequency of the stack.

Serial Port: A RS232 port provided to you for external data communications.

Stack: Converter, Booster, and Horn.

Step @ T (S): User-definable time at which Amp A or Force A is changed to AmpB or Force B.

Step @ E (J): User-definable energy at which AmpA/Force A is changed to AmpB/Force B.

Step @ Pwr (%): User definable power at which AmpA/Force A is changed to AmpB/Force B.

Step @ Col (in): User-definable collapse distance at which AmpA/Force A is changed to AmpB/Force B.

Step @ Ext Sig: Allows you to step either Force or Amplitude based upon an external signal.

Suspect Limits: User-defined limits which specify weld results used to identify a part as potentially suspect, but not necessarily enough to reject the part.

Test Scale: The magnification of the power bar scale on the front panel while the Test key is pushed.

Time Mode: Terminates the ultrasonics at a user-specified time.

Timeout: A time at which the ultrasonic energy terminates if the main control parameter has not been reached.

Trigger Beeper: An audible signal sounded when the trigger is made.

Upper limit switch (uls): A switch when activated indicates the actuator is in the home position.

UPS: Power Supply module; can be either analog (AUPS) or digital (DUPS).

User-defined limits for process resultants, where – is the user-defined lower limit, and + is the user defined upper limit.

–/+ Energy: The energy reached during the weld.

–/+ Force: The force at the end of the weld.

–/+ Power: The peak power as a percentage of the maximum reached during the weld.

–/+ Time: The weld time reached during the weld.

–/+ Abs D: The absolute distance from the Home position reached during the weld.

–/+ Col D: The collapse distance reached during the weld.

–/+ Trg D: The position at which the trigger occurred.

Velocity Graph: A printed graph of the velocity of the actuator during descent.

Weld Count: Count of completed weld cycles.

Weld Energy: The energy specified to be applied to the part during the weld cycle.

Weld Force: The force at the end of the weld cycle.

Weld History: The last 50 weld summary data lines that are saved and can be printed.

Weld Scale: The magnification of the power bar scale on the front panel during a weld cycle.

Weld State: A screen message showing the current state of the welder during or before the process. The list of messages are shown in the Run Screen section.

Weld Summary Data: A one-line summary of information associated with the last weld cycle.

Weld Time: The time for which ultrasonics are on.

Chapter 3: Delivery and Handling

3.1 Shipping and Handling

CAUTION	
	The Power Supply internal components are sensitive to static discharge. Many components can be harmed if the unit is dropped, shipped under improper conditions or otherwise mishandled.

3.1.1 Environmental Specifications

The Power Supply is an electronic unit that converts line voltage to ultrasonic energy and controls user input for regulating the weld process. Its internal components are sensitive to static discharge, and many of its components can be harmed if the unit is dropped, shipped under improper conditions, or otherwise mishandled.

The following environmental guidelines should be respected in the shipping of the Power Supply.

Table 3.1 Environmental Specifications

Environment	Range
Ambient Operating Temperature	+41°F to +122°F (+5°C to +50°C)
Storage / Shipping Temperature	–13°F to +158°F (–25°C to +70°C)
Shock / Vibration (transit)	40 g shock / 0.5 g and (3-100 Hz) vibration per ASTM 3332-88 and 3580-90
Humidity	30% to 95%, non-condensing

3.2 Receiving

The Power Supply is a sensitive electronic device. Many of its components can be harmed if the unit is dropped or otherwise mishandled.

CAUTION	
	The Actuator and the Power Supply are heavy. Handling, unpacking, and installation might require assistance or the use of a lifting device.

Scope of Delivery

Branson Power Supply units are carefully checked and packed before dispatch. It is recommended, however, that you follow the inspection procedure below after delivery.

To inspect the Power Supply when it is delivered, take the following steps:

Table 3.2 Inspecting the Power Supply upon delivery

Step	Action
1	Verify that all parts are complete according to the packing slip.
2	Check the packing and the unit for damage (visual inspection).
3	Report any damage claims to your carrier immediately.
4	Determine if any component has become loose during shipping and, if necessary, tighten screws.

NOTICE	
	If the goods delivered have been damaged during shipping, please contact the forwarding agent immediately. Retain packing material (for possible inspection or for sending back the unit).

CAUTION	
	The Actuator and the Power Supply are heavy. Handling, unpacking, and installation may require the assistance of a colleague or the use of lifting platforms or hoists.

3.3 Unpacking

The Power Supply is fully assembled. It is shipped in a sturdy cardboard box. Some additional items are shipped in the box with the Power Supply.

When unpacking the Power Supply, take the following steps:

Table 3.3 Unpacking the Power Supply

Step	Action
1	Unpack the Power Supply as soon as it arrives. Save the packing material.
2	Inspect the controls, indicators, and surface for signs of damage.
3	Remove the cover of the Power Supply (7.7: Parts Replacement) to check if any components became loose during shipping.
NOTICE If damage has occurred, notify the shipping company immediately. Retain packing materials for inspection.	
4	Store or ship the Power Supply only within a temperature range of –22°F to +158°F (–25°C to +70°C).

3.4 Returning Equipment

If you are returning equipment to Branson Ultrasonic Corporation, please call your Customer Service Representative to receive approval to return goods to Branson.

If you are returning equipment for repair refer to Chapter 1: Safety and Support, Section 1.5: Returning Equipment for Repair, of this manual, for appropriate procedure.

Chapter 4: Installation and Setup

4.1 About Installation

This chapter is intended to help the installer with the basic installation and setup of your new 2000-series welder. This chapter will bring the reader to the point at which the system is functionally "ready to weld".

CAUTION	
	The Actuator and related components are heavy. Handling, unpacking, and installation can require help or the use of lifting platforms or hoists.

International safety labels are found on the power supply and the actuator as well. Those that are of importance during Installation of the system are identified in the figures in this and other chapters of the manuals.

4.2 Handling and Unpacking

If there are any visible signs of damage to the shipping containers or the product, or you later discover hidden damage, NOTIFY YOUR CARRIER IMMEDIATELY. Save the packing material.

1. Unpack the 2000-series components as soon as they arrive. Refer to the following procedures.
2. Verify you have all of the equipment ordered. Some components are packed inside other boxes.
3. Inspect the controls, indicators, and surfaces for signs of damage.
4. Save all packing material, including the pallets and wood spacer blocks.

4.2.1 Unpack the Power Supply

Power supplies are shipped in a cardboard carton. It weighs approximately 40 lbs.

1. Open the box, remove the two foam top packing halves and lift the power supply out.
2. Remove the toolkit(s) and other components shipped with the power supply. These items may be shipped in small, separate boxes, or underneath the power supply in the box.
3. Save the packing material; evaluation systems will be returned using this packing material.

4.2.2 Unpack the Stand or Actuator

The stand (or actuator) is heavy and packed in a protective shipping container. The actuator toolkit is packed with the actuator. A booster, converter and other components may be packed inside the shipping container (depending on the equipment ordered).

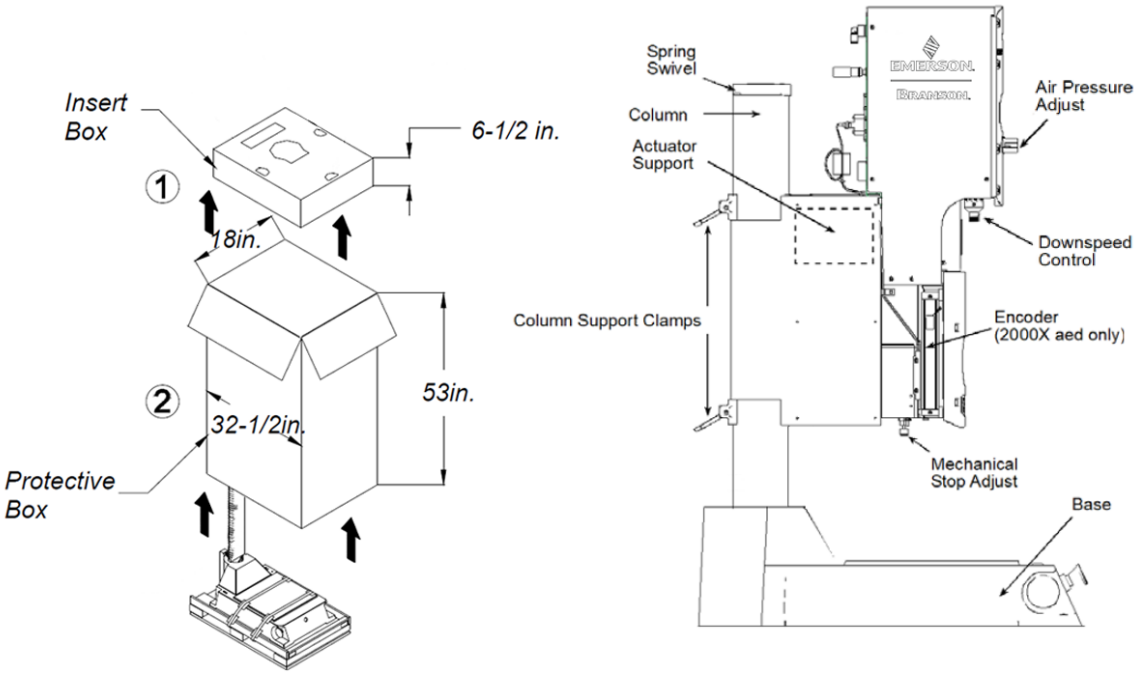
- Stands are shipped on a wooden pallet with a cardboard box cover
- Actuators (alone) are shipped in a rigid cardboard box using protective foam shells for support

Depending on which one of the following options applies to you, unpack the Branson actuator assembly:

4.2.3 Stand (actuator on a base)

CAUTION	
	Heed the “This End Up” arrows and the “Open Top First” instructions. The packaging is designed to be removed from the assemblies from an upright orientation only.

Figure 4.1 Unpacking the Stand (Actuator on a Base); left-side view of Stand



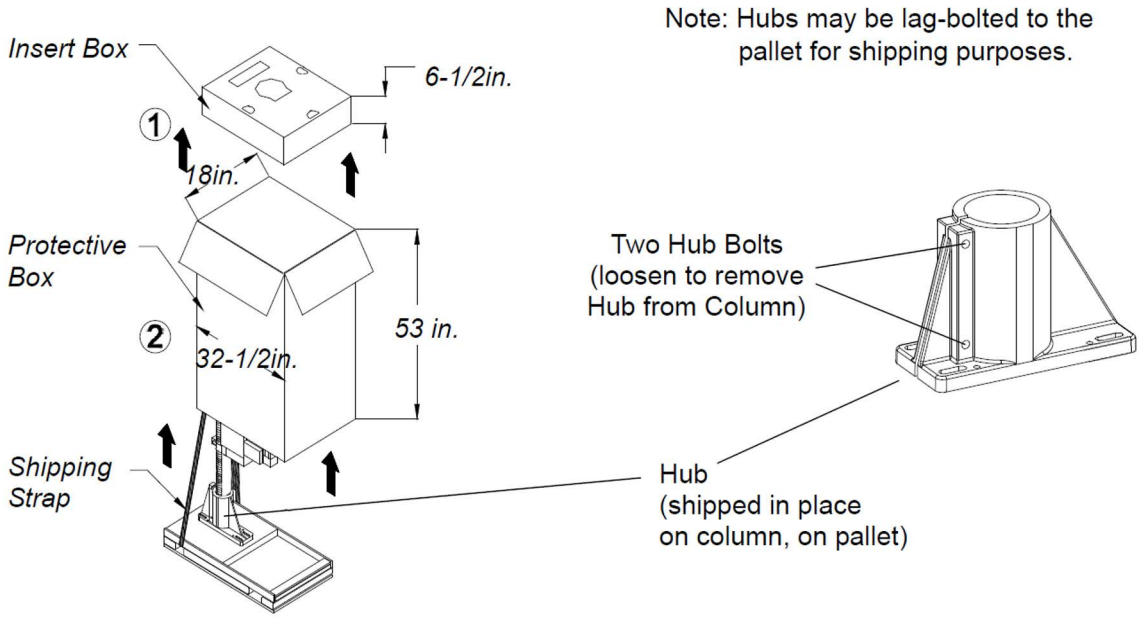
1. Move the shipping container close to the intended installation location, leave it on the floor.
2. Open the top of the box. Remove the insert from the top of the protective box.
3. Remove the staples at the bottom of the protective box. Lift the protective box off the pallet.

CAUTION	
	The column and column support are under spring tension from the counterbalance spring. Do NOT attempt to disassemble the column from the stand, but always keep the column support clamped together. When making height adjustments, carefully and slowly release the clamps to control the motion, and hold the stand to prevent sudden movements or injury.

4. Cut the two packing straps around the base and pallet. Pry off the two wooden shipping blocks (to the rear of the base) which prevent the base from sliding on the pallet.
5. The stand can now be moved into its desired location by sliding it off the pallet. Stands have a lifting hook for the use of overhead hoists to lift the assembly in place.
6. Remove the block of wood between the base and the column support by carefully loosening the two column clamps (allowing the actuator to rise slightly, but not allow sudden movements) and then cutting the shipping tape on the block of wood. RETIGHTEN THE COLUMN CLAMPS.
7. Unpack the toolkit from the insert box, and other parts (converter, booster, cables, manuals, etc.) that may have shipped with the stand. Save the packing material.
8. Go to **Take Inventory of Small Parts.** See Table 4.1.

4.2.4 Stand (Actuator on a Hub)

Figure 4.2 Unpacking the Stand (Actuator on a Hub); Hub shown separately



CAUTION	
⚠	Heed the "This End Up" arrows and the "Open Top First" instructions. The packaging is designed to be removed from the assemblies from an upright orientation only.

1. Move the shipping container close to the intended installation location, leave it on the floor.
2. Cut the two vertical packing straps, and open the top of the box. Remove the insert from the top of the box. Set the insert box aside.
3. Remove the staples at the bottom of the protective box. Lift the protective box off the pallet. Flatten the box and lay it next to the pallet (you will lay the stand on it soon).

CAUTION	
⚠	The unit may tend to tip over. Stabilize the stand using the lifting hook or an assistant.

4. Cut the packing strap securing the column support to the pallet.

CAUTION	
	The column and column support are under spring tension from the counterbalance spring. Do NOT attempt to disassemble the column from the stand, but always keep the column support clamped together. When making height adjustments, carefully and slowly release the clamps to control the motion, and hold the stand to prevent sudden movements or injury.

5. Remove the block(s) of wood between the base and the support by slowly loosening the two column clamps (allowing the stand to rise slightly) and then cutting the shipping tape on the block of wood. RETIGHTEN THE COLUMN CLAMPS.
6. Loosen the two hub bolts (for column clamping) on the hub.
7. Remove the hub from the pallet and set it aside. Some hubs are bolted to the pallet from the top.
8. Unpack the converter, booster, cables, manuals, toolkit, and insert box. Save the packing material, including the blocks of wood.
9. Go to Take Inventory of Small Parts. See Table 4.1.

4.2.5 Actuator (alone)

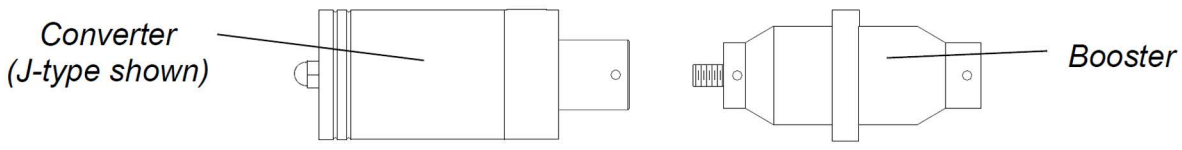
The actuator, if shipped alone, is assembled and ready to install.

Move the shipping container close to the intended installation location, leave it on the floor.

1. Open the top of the cardboard box, remove the insert from the top of the box and set it aside.
2. The toolkit, mounting bolts, converter and/or booster, manuals and cables as ordered, are shipped with the actuator. Unpack the converter, booster, toolkit and bolts from their packages.
3. Save the packing material.

NOTICE	
	The packaging may also include the converter and/or booster, if ordered.

Figure 4.3 Ultrasonic Converter (J-Type for stand use) and Booster



4.3 Take Inventory of Small Parts

Table 4.1 Small Parts Include**d (=x) with** Power Supply and/or Actuator Assemblies

Part or Kit	2000 Power Supply				Actuator		
	15 kHz	20 kHz	30 kHz	40 kHz	Stand (Base)	Stand (Hub)	(alone)
T-Handle Wrench	X				X	X	X
Mylar Washer Kit	X	X	X				
Silicone Grease				X			
Actuator Mtg. Bolts							X
15 kHz Spanners (2)	X						
20 kHz Spanners (2)		X					
30 kHz Spanners (2)			X				
40 kHz Spanners (2)				X			
40 kHz Sleeve					ordered part	ordered part	ordered part
40 kHz Sleeve Spanner					ships w/ Sleeve	ships w/ Sleeve	ships w/ Sleeve
Fixture Bolts and Washer					X		
M8 Allen Wrench					X		
5/64” Allen Wrench							

4.3.1 Cables

Two cables connect the power supply and actuator: the actuator interface cable, and the RF cable. If the system is to be automated, you may also need a J911 start cable and a user I/O cable. Check your invoice for cable types and cable lengths.

Table 4.2 List of Cables

EDP Number	Description
101-241-202	Remote Pneumatic (RP) Package Cable (J924), 8’
101-241-203	Actuator Interface, 8’ (J925S)
101-241-204	Actuator Interface, 15’ (J925S)
101-241-205	Actuator Interface, 25’ (J925S)
101-241-206	Actuator Interface, 50’ (J925S)
101-241-207	Alarm I/O, 8’ (J957S)

Table 4.2 List of Cables

EDP Number	Description
101-241-208	Alarm I/O, 15’ (J957S)
101-241-209	Alarm I/O, 25’ (J957S)
101-241-258	Alarm I/O, 50’ (J957S)
101-240-020R	Start Cable (J911) 8’ (req PLA)
101-240-015R	Start Cable (J911) 15’ (req PLA)
101-240-010R	Start Cable (J911) 25’ (req PLA)
101-240-168R	Start Cable (J911) 50’ (req PLA)
101-240-072R	Start Cable (J913) 25’ (no PLA req)
101-240-017	RF, non-CE - 8’ (J931S)
101-240-012	RF, non-CE - 15’ (J931S)
101-240-007	RF, non-CE - 25’ (J931S) **Note:** Not for 30 kHz or 40 kHz systems
101-240-200	RF, non-CE - 50’ (J931) **Note:** Not for 30 kHz or 40 kHz systems
101-240-034	RF, non CE - 8’ (J 934)
101-240-035	RF, non CE - 15’ (J934)
101-240-081	RF, non CE - 8’ (J936S)
101-240-069	RF, non CE - 15’ (J936S)
101-240-080	RF, non CE - 25’ (J936S)
101-240-176	RF, CE - 8’ (J931CS)
101-240-177	RF, CE - 15’ (J931CS)
101-240-178	RF, CE - 25’ (J931CS) **Note:** Not for 30 kHz or 40 kHz systems
101-240-297	CBL EXT 36' RF J931C CE
101-240-199	RF, CE - 50’ (J931C)
101-240-179	RF, CE - 8’ (J934C)
101-240-181	RF, CE - 15’ (J934C)
101-240-182	RF, CE - 20’ (J934C)
100-246-630	Ground Detect Cable
100-143-043R	Printer cable, 6’

4.4 Installation Requirements

This section covers the location options, dimensions of the major assemblies, environmental requirements, electrical requirements and factory air requirements, to help you plan and execute your installation successfully.

4.4.1 Location

The actuator or stand may be installed in a variety of positions. The stand (on a base) is often manually operated, using its base-mounted start switches, and so is installed at a safe and comfortable workbench height (approximately 30-36 inches) with the operator sitting or standing in front of the system. Stands (on hubs) are often used in automated systems and may be manually or automatically loaded and unloaded.

WARNING	
	The stand may tip over if moved around the axis of its column, if not properly secured. The work surface on which a stand is installed must be sturdy enough to support it, and secure enough to not tip over when the stand is adjusted during installation or setup.

The power supply may be located up to 50 feet away for 20 kHz, (20' for 30 kHz, and 15' for 40 kHz models) from the actuator. The power supply must be accessible for user parameter changes and settings, and must be placed in a horizontal orientation. The power supply should be positioned so it does not draw in dust, dirt or material via its rear fans. Refer to the illustrations on the pages that follow for a dimensional drawing of each component. All dimensions are approximate and may vary between models:

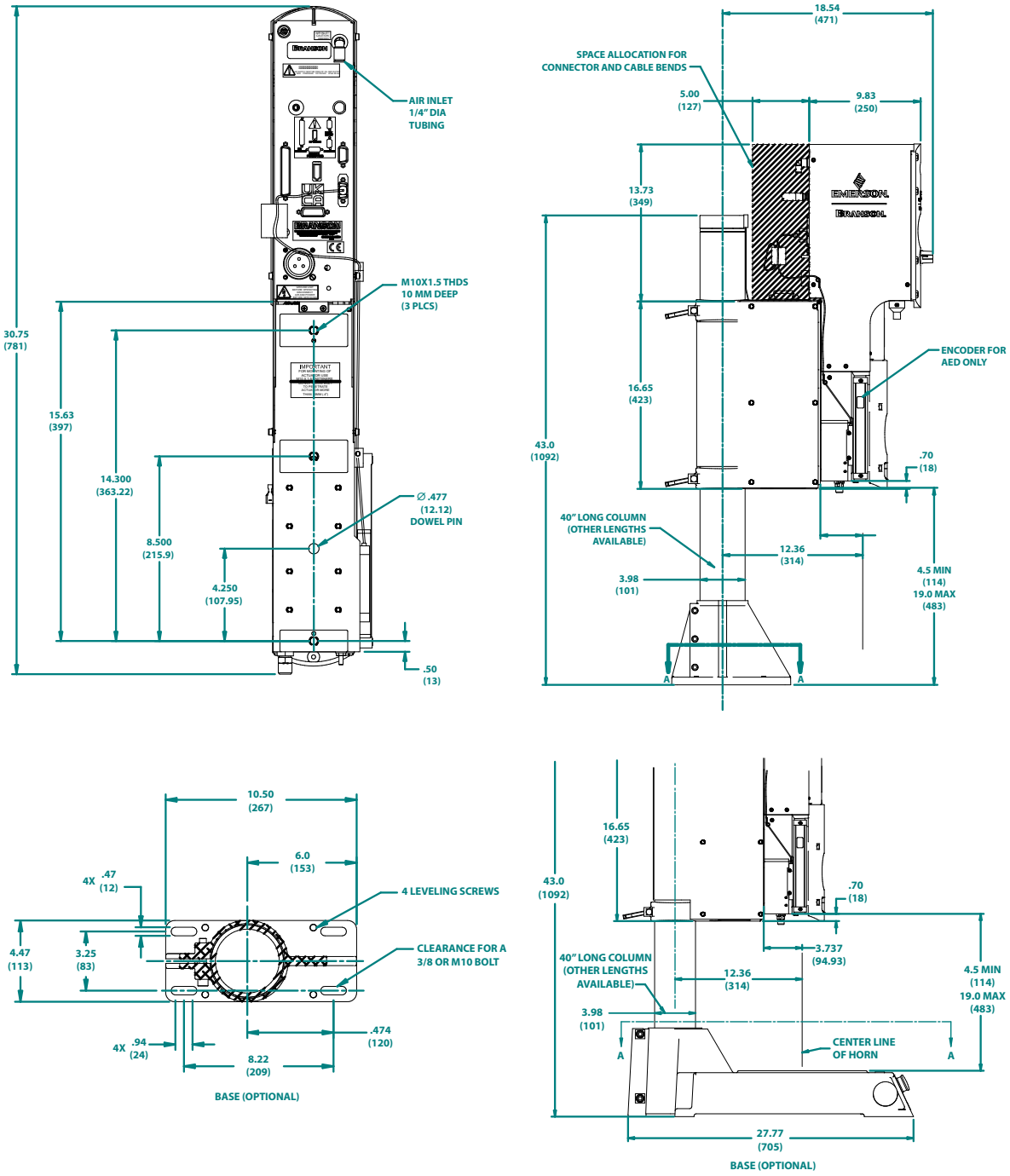
Figure 4.4 ae Actuator Dimensional Drawing

Figure 4.5 Power Supply Dimensional Drawing

Figure 4.6 Base Mounting Centers

Figure 4.7 Mounting Bolt Pattern for the Hub (for Stand on Hub)

Figure 4.4 ae Actuator Dimensional Drawing



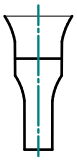
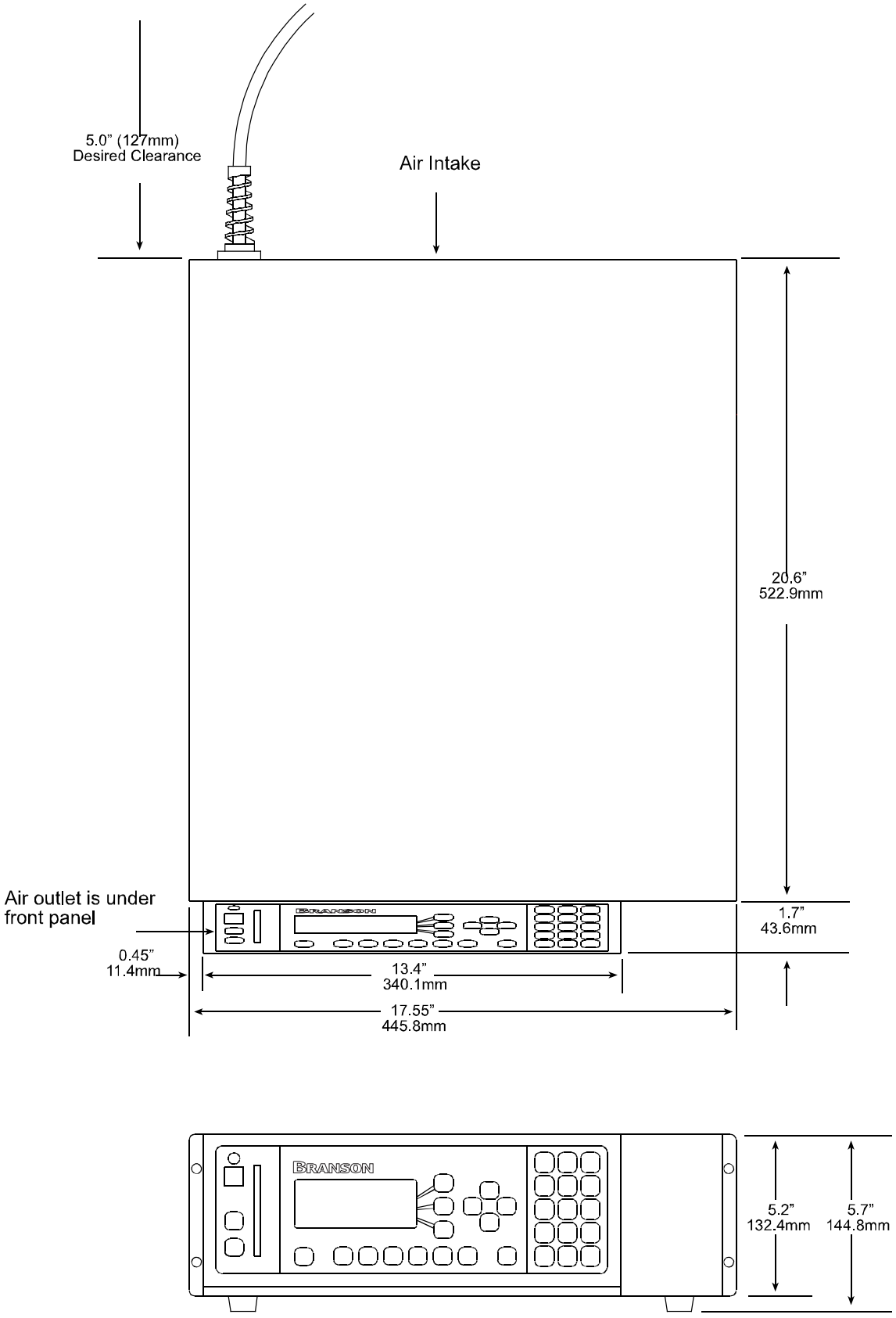
HORN DIMENSIONS	FREQUENCY			
	20 KHz	30 KHz	40 KHz	
HORN WIDTH AND LENGTH WILL VARY WITH EACH DESIGN 	2.12 TO 2.75	1.30 TO 1.54	0.69 TO 0.94	DIMENSION SHOWN ARE APPROXIMATE TO ALLOW FOR DIFFERENT BOOSTER GAIN HORN DESIGN, MATERIAL AND TUNING. ALL HORN DIMENSIONS ARE FOR 1/2 WAVE DESIGNS. ALLOW FOR ADJUSTABILITY AND POTENTIAL TOOLING CHANGE.
	5 TO 5.50	2.97 TO 3.80	2.5 TO 2.75	

Figure 4.5 Power Supply Dimensional Drawing



4.4.2 Environmental Specifications

Table 4.3 Environmental Specifications

Environmental Concern	Acceptable Range
Humidity	30% to 95%, non-condensing
Ambient Operating Temperature	+5°C to +50°C (41°F to 122°F)
Storage / Shipping Temperature	-25°C to +55°C (-13°F to +131°F); Up to +70°C (+158°F) for 24 hours

4.4.3 Electrical Input Power Ratings

Plug the Power Supply into a single-phase, grounded, 3-wire, 50 or 60 Hz power source. Table 4.4 lists the current and fuse ratings for the various models.

Table 4.4 Input Power Requirements

Model	Power	Current Rating	NEMA Connector
20 kHz	1250 W 200V - 240V	7 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA L6-20P Plug
	1250 W 100V - 120V	14 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA 5-15P Plug
	2500 W 200V - 240V	14 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA L6-20P Plug
	4000 W 220V - 240V	25 Amp Max. @ 220V / 25 Amp fuse	*
30 kHz	750 W 100 - 120V	10 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA 5-15P Plug
	750 W 200 - 240V	5 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA L6-20P Plug
	1500 W 200V - 240V	10 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA L6-20P Plug
40 kHz	400 W 200V - 240V	3 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA L6-20P Plug
	400 W 100V - 120V	5 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA 5-15P Plug
	800 W 200V - 240V	5 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA L6-20P Plug
	800 W 100V - 120V	10 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse	NEMA 5-15P Plug

*To be hardwired by customer.

4.4.4 Factory Air

The factory compressed air supply must be "clean (to a 5 micron level), dry and unlubricated" air with a regulated maximum pressure of 100 psig (690 kPa). Depending on your application, the actuator requires between 35 to 100 psi. Stands include an in-line air filter. Actuators (alone) require a customer-provided air filter. A quick-disconnect fitting is suggested. Use a lockout device on the air line if required.

WARNING	
	Synthetic air compressor lubricants containing Silicone or WD-40 will cause internal actuator damage and failure due to the solvents contained within these types of lubricants.

4.4.4.1 Air Filter

Actuators (alone) require a customer-provided air filter which protects from particulate matter of 5 microns or larger. If a stand is mounted in a position other than upright (vertical), each air filter must be relocated and oriented so its bowl is the lowest point, and the air flow across the air filter is horizontal. This may require some re-plumbing of the existing equipment at the customer site. The air filter is held in place by two screws on a bracket bolted to the column support, and by the factory-installed tubing. For further information, see your Actuator manual.

4.4.4.2 Pneumatic Tubing and Connectors

Actuator assemblies are not externally plumbed from the factory, but provide conventional 1/4-inch OD pneumatic tubing connection at the air inlet. If making connections for an actuator, or if re-plumbing your system for a new air filter location, you must use 1/4-inch OD tubing and connectors rated above 100 psi (use "Imperial Eastman Poly-Flo Tubing 44-P-1/4" or equivalent, and appropriate connectors). Refer to Actuator manual.

4.4.4.3 Pneumatic Connections to Actuator Xae/Xaed

Air connection to the actuator is made to the AIR INLET connector on the top rear of the actuator, with plastic pneumatic tubing. For installations using actuator-alone assemblies, you must provide an air filter assembly which will support at least to 100 psig and remove particulate matter of 5 microns or larger.

4.5 Installation Steps

WARNING	
	This product is heavy and can cause a pinching or crushing injury during installation or adjustment. Keep clear of moving parts and do not loosen clamps unless directed to do so.

CAUTION	
	If a stand is not mounted in a vertical position, the air filters (on the column support) must be removed, reoriented, and replumbed. Failure to do so can cause air filter failure, and actuator failures.

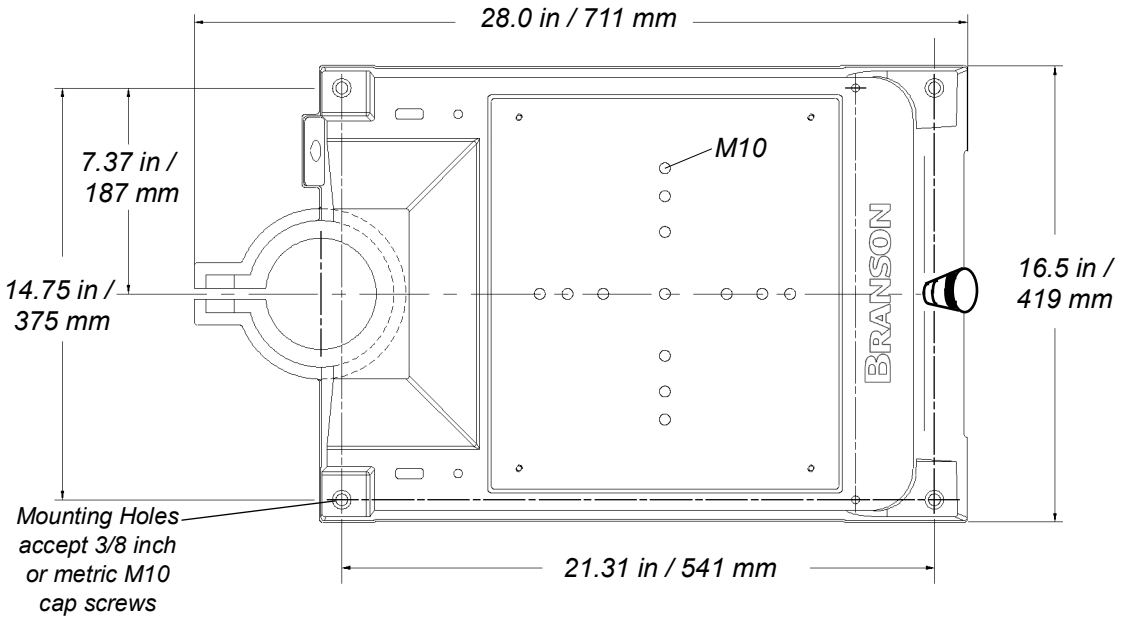
4.5.1 Mounting the Stand (Actuator on Base)

The base must be bolted to your workbench to prevent tipping or undesired movement. Four mounting bolt holes are provided at the corners of the casting, and will accept your 3/8 inch or M10 cap screws. Use flat washers against the metal casting to prevent gouging. Refer to Figure 4.6.

CAUTION	
	You must secure the base to your work surface using four bolts, to prevent tipping or undesired movement, in the event the actuator is moved off-center or rotated around the column.

1. Ensure there are no overhead obstructions and that no pinch or rub points exist. Remember that the actuator is taller than the column when fully raised, and there are exposed connections.
2. Mount the base to your workbench using four socket-head cap screws (customer provided, 3/8 inch (US bases) or M10 (metric bases)). Use flat washers against the metal casting to prevent gouging. The use of nylon lock nuts with your cap screws is suggested, to reduce loosening due to vibration and movement.
3. Connect factory air to the air hose on the stand (3/8 NPT male fitting on the hose). A quick-disconnect fitting is suggested. Use a lockout device on the air line if required.
4. Verify the base/start switch control cable is properly connected to the **back of actuator**.
5. Verify the linear encoder connector is properly connected to the **back of the actuator**.

Figure 4.6 Base Mounting Centers

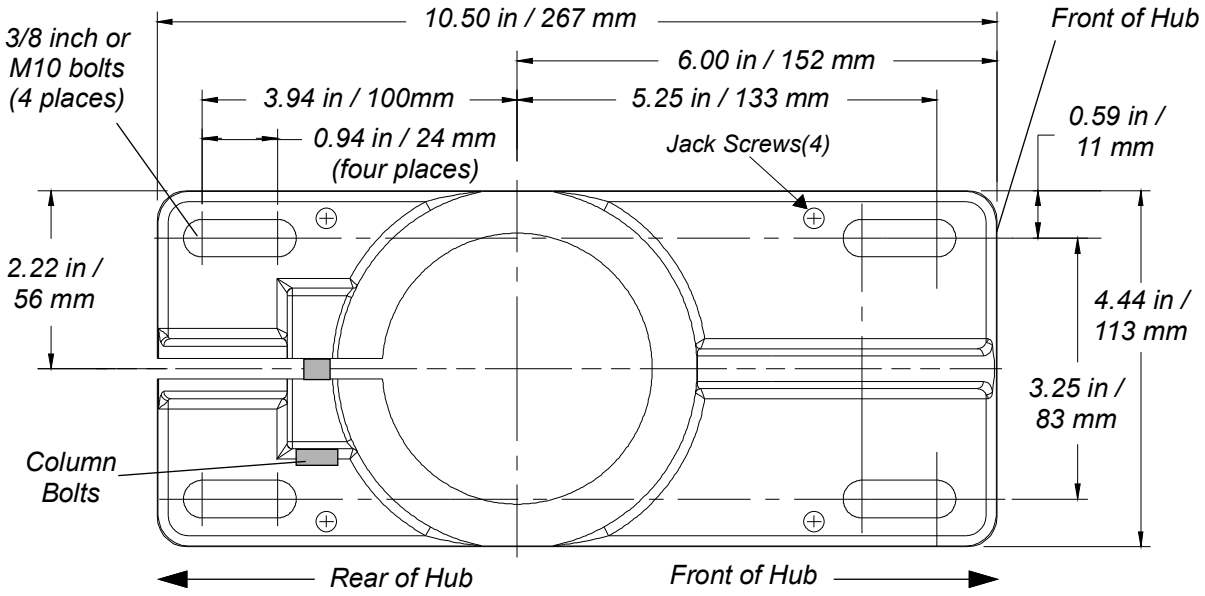


4.5.2 Mounting the Stand (Actuator on Hub-mounted column)

During unpacking, you removed the hub from the column/stand assembly. You must choose a mounting location for the hub that will support the column and actuator, and provide the hardware to mount it. Four mounting bolt holes are provided at the corners of the casting, and will accept your 3/8 inch or M10 hardware. Use flat washers against the metal casting to prevent gouging. Refer to Figure 4.7.

CAUTION	
	The hub must be installed with its front in the same direction as the front of the actuator. The column bolts of the hub are found on the rear of the hub. See Figure 4.7 for mounting details.

Figure 4.7 Mounting Bolt Pattern for the Hub (for Stand on Hub)



1. Locate the hub in the desired location. Ensure no overhead or side obstructions will interfere with normal operation or use of the system.

CAUTION	
⚠	Mount the hub to your work surface using four bolts, 3/8-inch or M10 shank size, with flat washers against its metal casting (customer provided hardware).

2. Carefully lift the actuator and column assembly, and mount the column in the hub. Align the flat face of the spring swivel with the top-front of the actuator. Tighten the two bolts on the hub.
3. Connect factory air to the air hose on the stand (3/8 NPT male fitting on the hose). A quick-disconnect fitting is suggested. Use a lockout device on the air line if required.
4. Verify the base/start switch control cable is properly connected to the **back of actuator**.
5. Verify the linear encoder connector is properly connected to the **back of the actuator**.
6. Use jack screws to fine adjust the system level. A 3/16” allen wrench should be used for the 3/8”-16 x 3/4” jack screws.

4.5.3 Actuator (alone)

The actuator (alone) is intended for installation on your custom-made mounting support. It is located in place with a mounting pin and secured using three metric bolts which are provided with the actuator.

1. Lift the actuator from the box. Carefully lay the assembly on its right side (NOT on the side with the linear encoder).

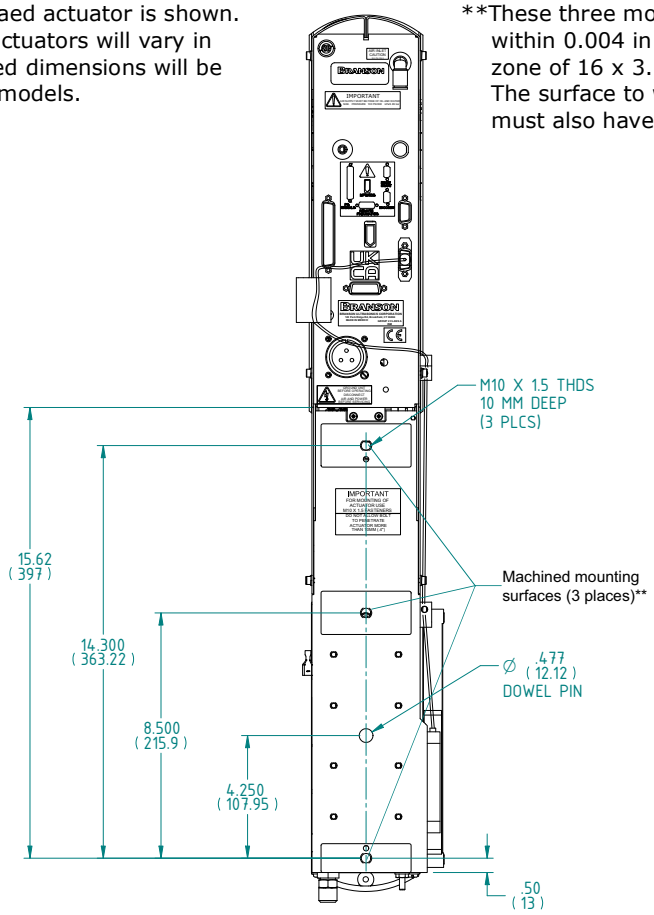
CAUTION	
	The actuator support bolts for the 2000-Series actuators are metric, M10 x 1.5 thread pitch, 25mm long. The support pin and mounting bolts must not extend more than 0.40 in (10 mm) into the actuator, otherwise, binding or damage to the carriage may occur.

CAUTION	
	DO NOT use 900-Series M10 x 1.25 mounting bolts. They have a different thread pitch and will not interchange with those used on the 2000-Series.

2. Use of a guide pin is suggested. It is not provided with the actuator. If you require a guide pin, use a solid metal dowel pin, 12mm diameter, which must not extend into the actuator more than 0.40 inch (10mm) from your support.

Figure 4.8 Actuator Rear View, Mounting Surface, Bolt and Guide Pin Locations

Rear view of ae/aed actuator is shown. Although other actuators will vary in height, referenced dimensions will be the same for all models.



**These three mounting surfaces are flat within 0.004 in. (0.1mm) TIR, in a tolerance zone of 16 x 3.5 in. (410 x 90 mm). The surface to which the actuator is mounted must also have the same flatness tolerance.

3. Lift the actuator assembly into position on your mount, and secure using the metric bolts provided.

CAUTION	
	In the event you must use bolts of a different length, ensure that the bolts extend more than 0.25 inch (6 mm) into the threads in the actuator housing, but less than 0.40 inch (10 mm).

4.5.4 Mount the Power Supply

The power supply is designed to be placed on a workbench (rubber feet on bottom) within cable-length limits of the actuator, or it may be rack-mounted in a standard 19-inch Rack (using an optional rack mount handle kit). It has two rear-mounted fans which draw cooling air from rear to front, which must be free from obstruction. Do not place the power supply on the floor or in other locations that will allow dust, dirt or contaminants to be drawn into the power supply.

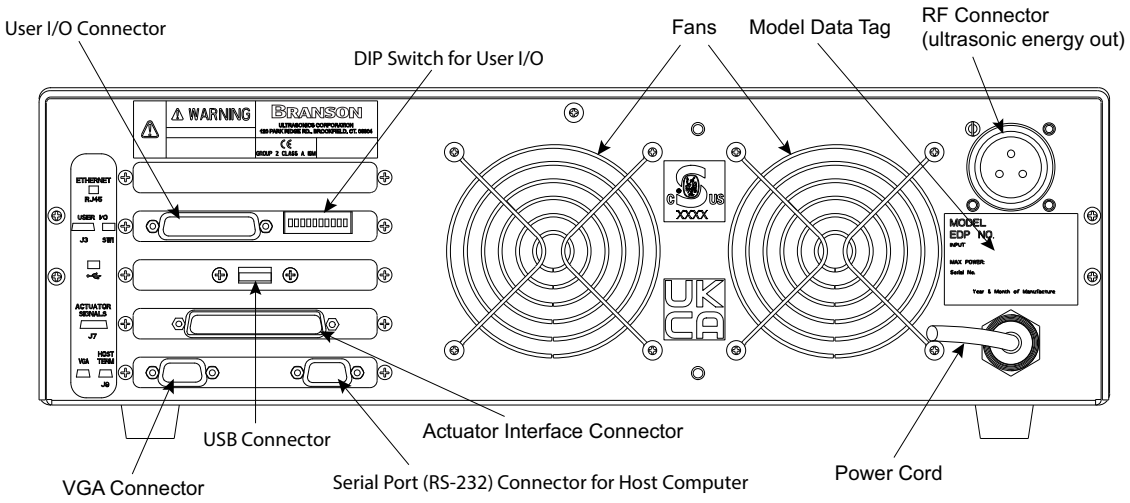
The controls on the front of the power supply must be accessible and readable for setup changes.

All electrical connections are made to the rear of the power supply, which should be positioned in your workspace with adequate clearance (approximately 4 inches or more on either side, and 6 inches to the rear) for cable access and ventilation. Do not place anything on top of the power supply case.

See Figure 4.5 Power Supply Dimensional Drawing for a dimensional drawing of the 2000 Power Supply.

4.5.5 Interconnect between Power Supply and Actuator

Figure 4.9 Connections on Rear of Power Supply



The cable lengths are limited because of the amount and type of power and control being delivered to the remainder of the system. Performance and results can suffer if the RF cable is crushed, pinched, damaged or modified. Contact your Branson Representative if

you have special cable requirements. In some cases, remote operation from a User I/O or a Host Computer can be used to solve a distance limitation.

4.5.6 Input Power (Main)

The system requires single-phase input power, which you connect to the Power Supply using the integral power cord. See Table 4.4 Input Power Requirements for plug and receptacle requirements for your specific power level.

Refer to the unit's Model Data Tag to be sure of the power rating of the Model in your system.

4.5.7 Output Power (RF Cable)

Ultrasonic Energy is delivered to a screw-on receptacle connection on the rear of the Power Supply, which is connected to the Actuator or the Converter (depending on your application).

WARNING	
	Never operate the System with the RF Cable disconnected or if the RF Cable is damaged.

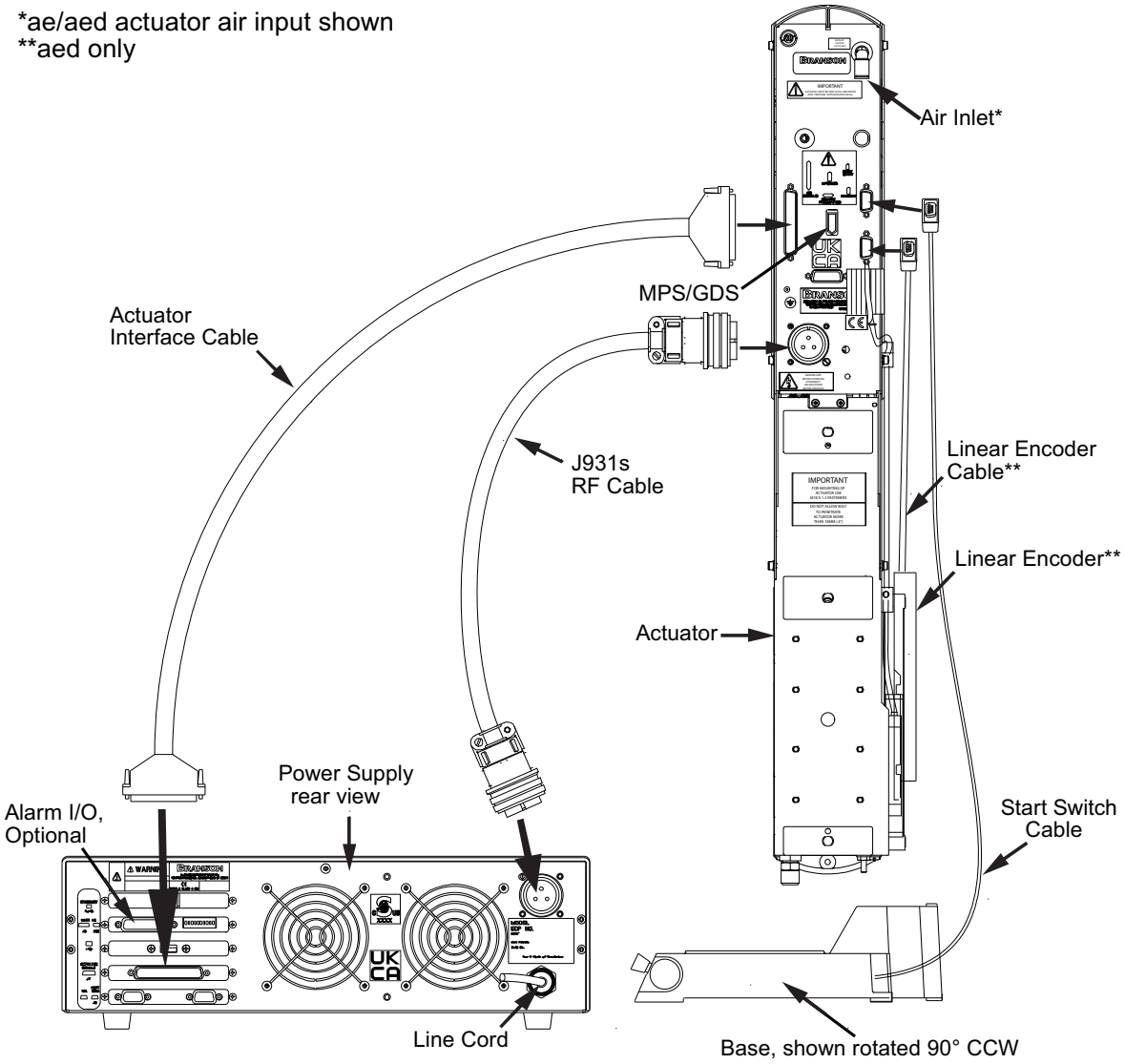
4.5.8 Interconnect between Power Supply and Actuator

If using a Branson 2000-series Actuator, there are two electrical connections between the Power Supply and the Actuator: the RF Cable and the Actuator Interface cable. A 37-pin cable is used for Power and Control Signaling between the 2000X ea Power Supply and a Branson Actuator. The cable connects to the rear of the Power Supply and the rear of the Actuator. Refer to Figure 4.9 Connections on Rear of Power Supply for clarification of connections on rear of power supply.

There can be other connections to the Actuator, and other connections to the Power Supply, but these are the only two standard connections, depicted in Figure 4.11.

For ground detect use, to have ultrasonic energy turn off when the horn comes in contact with your electrically isolated fixture or anvil, it is necessary to install Branson cable EDP No. 100-246-630 from the MPS/GDS receptacle on the rear of the actuator to your isolated fixture/anvil in order to utilize this feature.

Figure 4.10 Electrical Connections from Power Supply to a 2000-series Actuator

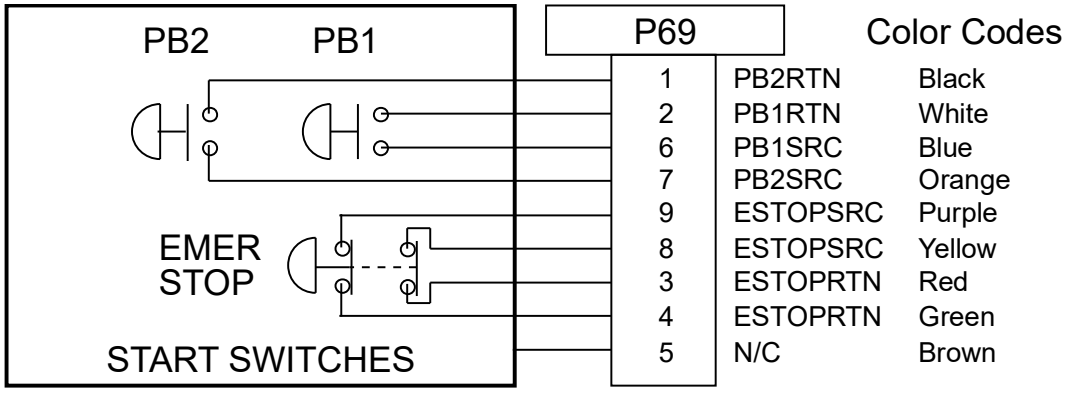


4.6 Start Switch Connection (Automation)

NOTICE	
	See Appendix B: Automation for additional information about Automation.

A Branson actuator requires 2 start switches and emergency stop connection. Stands on a base include this connection (factory installed and connected from the base) while the stand on a hub and actuator (alone) applications require the user make their own start switch/E-stop connections, as follows:

Figure 4.11 Start Switch Connection Codes



NOTICE	
	Solid state devices may be used in lieu of mechanical start switches providing their leakage current does not exceed 0.1mA.

NOTICE	
	Start Switches PB1 and PB2 must be closed within 200 milliseconds of each other, and remain closed until the WELD ON signal is active, to effect a start condition.

BASE/START is the DB-9 female connection on the back of the actuator. Your cable requires a male DB-9 (D-shell) connector.

PB1 and PB2 are two normally open start-switches which must be operated simultaneously to start the welding cycle. These must be closed within 200 milliseconds of each other, or error message: "Start Sw Time" will display. This doesn't require a reset, but for the next cycle, switches must be within time limit to preclude re-occurrence of error message. Refer to Note above.

EMER STOP is an emergency stop switch, normally closed.

4.6.1 Serial (RS-232) Port Connector

An RS-232c serial port (DB-9 format) is provided for the Host Computer option. Only three data leads of this port are supported at this time (Data Send TXD, Data Receive RXD, and Signal Ground GND). The remainder of the leads are 'reserved'. A null modem cable is required.

The comport parameters are fixed, can not be altered or viewed in the menu.

The fixed values are:

1. com speed = 9600 baud
2. no parity
3. 1 stop bit
4. 8 data bits

4.6.2 Parallel Printer Connector

The Printer Connector supports several printer models, both dot matrix and ink jet, to provide printed reports of your weld information, and to provide graphical representation of your weld results. The tractor feed feature of dot matrix printers is preferred for many manufacturing applications. If necessary, consult your Branson representative for recommendations for your specific needs.

The printers listed in Table 4.5 Printer Compatibility have been fully tested to confirm compatibility with Branson products. Printers that were tested and are NOT compatible are the Panasonic 1091 and Epson LX300.

The printer interface uses a standard 36-pin Centronics cable (Branson printer cable EDP 100-143-043R).

Table 4.5 Printer Compatibility

Manufacturer	Model No.		
Epson	LQ-570	FX-980	Stylus 900
Okidata	5340HE	320 Turbo	520**
Panasonic	1180	1150	
H-P	610C	540	600

** Includes both off the shelf and Branson supplied units. However, all units excepting the Branson supplied Okidata 520 may not stop printing when abort is selected in the menu. The data may have been transferred to the printer and can't be halted.

NOTICE	
	Power for the Power Supply and the printer must be OFF before installing the printer cable. If it is installed with power on, the power supply front panel may lock up.

4.6.3 User I/O Interface

The user I/O is a standard interface for automation, provided on the power supply. It provides the ability for the customer to make their own interface for their automation or special control or reporting needs. The interface cable has an HD44 female D-shell connection on the rear of the power supply. The electrical interface outputs may be configured for open collector mode or for signal mode (signal voltage levels as indicated), by setting the user I/O DIP switch.

DIP switch SW1 for the user I/O is located next to the J3 on the back of the 2000-series power supply. User I/O interface cable pinout is listed in Table 4.7 User I/O Input and Output Function Selection.

Figure 4.12 User I/O Cable Identification and Wire Color Diagram

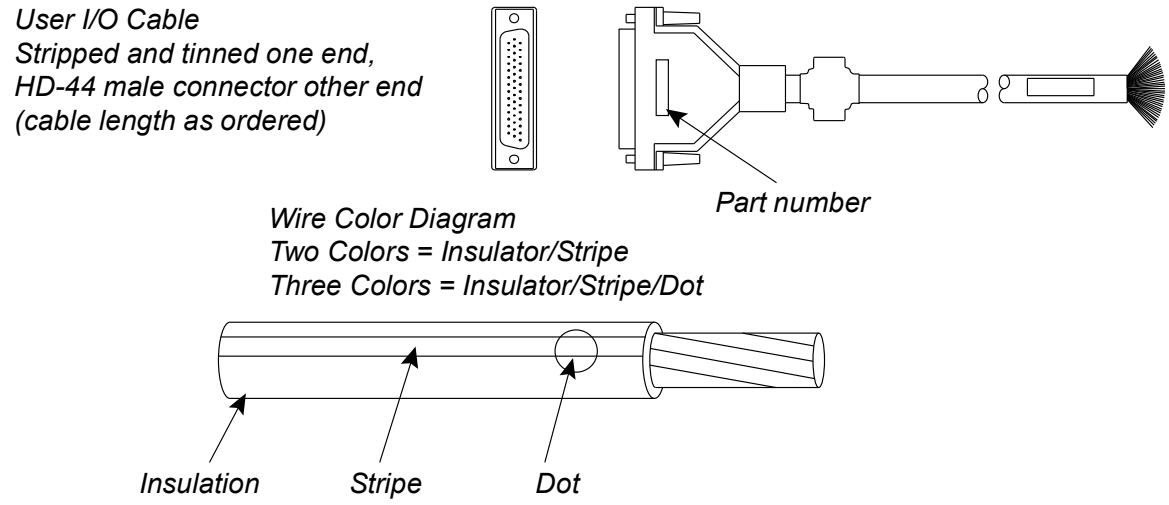


Table 4.6 User I/O Cable Pin Assignments, Alphabetical Order

Pin	Signal Name	Signal Type	Direction	Signal Range	Definition	Colors
7	ACT_CLEAR	0V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA	Actuator clear signal	Red/Wht
24	AMPLITUDE_OUT	Analog	Output	0V to 10V	Amplitude signal from PS	Red/Blk/ Grn
2	CYCLE_ABORT	24V True	Input	0/24V, 100mA		Red/Blk
3	EXT_RESET	24V True	Input	0/24V, 100mA	System Reset	Grn/Blk

Table 4.6 User I/O Cable Pin Assignments, Alphabetical Order

Pin	Signal Name	Signal Type	Direction	Signal Range	Definition	Colors
18	EXT_SEEK+	24V True	Input	0/24V, 100mA		Red/Blk/ Wht
38	FREQ_OUT	Analog	Output	-10V to +10V	Frequency Signal from PS	Blk/Wht/ Blu
6	G_ALARM	0V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA		Blk/Wht
14	GEN_ALARM_RELAY_1	Relay Contact	Output	40V, 0.25A	Contact Closure	Red/Grn
29	GEN_ALARM_RELAY_2	Relay Contact	Output	40V, 0.25A	Contact Closure	Wht/Red/ Orn
1	J3_1_INPUT	24V True	Input	0/24V, 100mA	User definable inputs. Refer to Table 4.7 User I/O Input and Output Function Selection to view available selections.	Wht/Blk
17	J3_17_INPUT	24V True	Input	0/24V, 100mA		Wht/Blk/ Red
19	J3_19_INPUT	24V True	Input	0/24V, 100mA		Grn/Blk/ Wht
31	J3_31_INPUT	24V True	Input	0/24V, 100mA		Wht/Red/ Blu
32	J3_32_INPUT	24V True	Input	0/24V, 100mA		Blk/Wht/ Grn
33	J3_33_INPUT	24V True	Input	0/24V, 100mA		Wht/Blk/ Grn
8	J3_8_OUTPUT	24V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA	User definable outputs. Refer to Table 4.7 User I/O Input and Output Function Selection to view available selections.	Grn/Wht
22	J3_22_OUTPUT	24V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA		Blk/Red/ Grn
36	J3_36_OUTPUT	24V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA		Orn/Red/ Grn
9	MEM	Analog	Output	-10V to +10V	Memory Signal from PS	Blu/Wht
11	MEM_CLEAR	Open Collector	Output	24V, 25mA max	Memory Clear signal send to PS	Wht/Red
40	MEMORY_STORE	Open Collector	Output	24V, 25mA max	Memory store from PS	Red/Wht/ Blu
34	PB_RELEASE	0V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA		Red/Wht/ Grn
37	PWR	Analog	Output	0V to 10V	Power Signal from PS	Blu/Red/ Grn
21	READY	0V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA		Blu/Blk/ Wht
5	REJECT	0V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA		Blu/Blk
43	READY_ RELAY_1	Relay Contact	Output	40V, 0.25A	Contact Closure	Blu/Orn/ Red
15	READY_RELAY_2	Relay Contact	Output	40V, 0.25A	Contact Closure	Orn/Grn

Table 4.6 User I/O Cable Pin Assignments, Alphabetical Order

Pin	Signal Name	Signal Type	Direction	Signal Range	Definition	Colors
26	RUN	Open Collector	Output	24V, 25mA max	Run signal send to PS	Orn/Blk/ Grn
39	SEEK	Open Collector	Output	24V, 25mA max	Seek Signal send to PS	Wht/Blk/ Blu
4	SOL_VALVE_SRC	24V	Output	0/24V, 125mA	SV1 Source	Orn/Blk
16	SOL_VALVE_RTN	24V Return	Input	0V	SV1 Return	Blk/Wht/ Red
20	SUSPECT_PART	0V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA		Orn/Blk/ Wht
10	USER_AMP_IN	Analog	Input	-10V to +10V	User Amplitude control signal	Blk/Red
25	USER_FREQ_OFFSET	Analog	Input	-10V to +10V	User Freq. offset control signal	Grn/Blk/ Orn
35	WELD_ON	0V True	Output	0/24V, 100mA	Start of sonics and trigger	Grn/Wht/ Blu
30	WELD_ON_RELAY_1	Relay Contact	Output	40V, 0.25A	Contact Closure	Orn/Wht/ Blu
44	WELD_ON_RELAY_2	Relay Contact	Output	40V, 0.25A	Contact Closure	Blk/Orn/ Red
23	+10V_REF	Analog	Output	10.0V	10VDC ref. voltage from PS	Wht/Red/ Grn
12	24V_RTN	24V Ground	Input	0V	24V Return	Orn/Red
13	24V_SRC	24V Source	Output	24V, 1.25A max	24V Source	Blu/Red
27	24V_RTN	24V Ground	Input	0V	24V Return	Blu/Wht/ Orn
28	24V_SRC	24V Source	Output	24V, 1.25A max	24V Source	Blk/Wht/ Orn
41	24V_RTN	24V Ground	Input	0V	24V Return	Grn/Orn/ Red
42	24V_SRC	24V Source	Output	24V, 1.25A max	24V Source	Orn/Red/ Blu

CAUTION	
	Ensure all unused wires are properly isolated. Failure to do so may result in Power Supply or system failure.

NOTICE	
	Refer to the Branson Automation Guide (EDP 100-214-273) for additional information about selection and use of Input and Output features listed in the following Table.

Table 4.7 User I/O Input and Output Function Selection

Input		Output	
J3_1_INPUT	Disabled Select Preset* Ext U/S Delay Display Lock Sonics Disable Memory Reset External Start Ext Signal Sync In	J3_8_OUTPUT	Disabled Confirm Preset Ext Beeper Cycle Okay No Cycle Alarm Overload Alarm Modified Alarm Note External Start Sync Out
J3_17_INPUT		J3_22_OUTPUT	
J3_19_INPUT		J3_36_OUTPUT	
J3_31_INPUT			
J3_32_INPUT			
J3_33_INPUT			

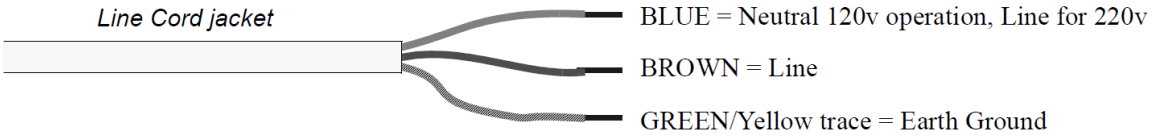
* This option is not available at J3-1 Input.

4.6.4 Input Power Plug

If you must add or change the input power plug, use the following color code for the conductors found in the international harmonized line cord. Add the plug that is appropriate for your input power receptacle.

CAUTION	
	The power supply can be permanently damaged if it is connected to the incorrect line voltage, or if the wiring connection is mis-wired. It also presents a safety hazard if mis-wired. Use of the correct plug or connector helps prevent incorrect connections.

Figure 4.13 International Harmonized Line Cord Color Code



4.6.5 User I/O DIP Switch (SW1)

DIP switch SW1, for the user I/O is located next to the J3 on the back of the 2000-series power supply, as shown in Figure 4.9 Connections on Rear of Power Supply. The settings of these switches affect the user I/O signals. Factory default setting is for all dip switches is set to ON (closed: switch position closest to number designation).

- If the dip switch is set to the ON (closed) position, the corresponding Output pin will be configured as the current source, 25mA max
- If the dip switch is set to the OFF (open) position, the corresponding Output pin will be configured as an "open collector", 24VDC, 25 mA max. current sink

Table 4.8 User I/O DIP Switch Functions

Switch Position	Signal Description	Output Signal
1	REJECT_SIG	REJECT
2	SUSPECT_SIG	SUSPECT
3	PB_RELEASE_SIG	PB_RELEASE
4	G_ALARM_SIG	G_ALARM
5	READY_SIG	READY
6	WELD_ON_SIG	WELD_ON
7	ACTUATOR_CLEAR_SIG	ACT_CLEAR
8	J3_22_OUT_SIG	J3_22_OUTPUT
9	J3_36_OUT_SIG	J3_36_OUTPUT
10	J3_8_OUT_SIG	J3_8_OUTPUT

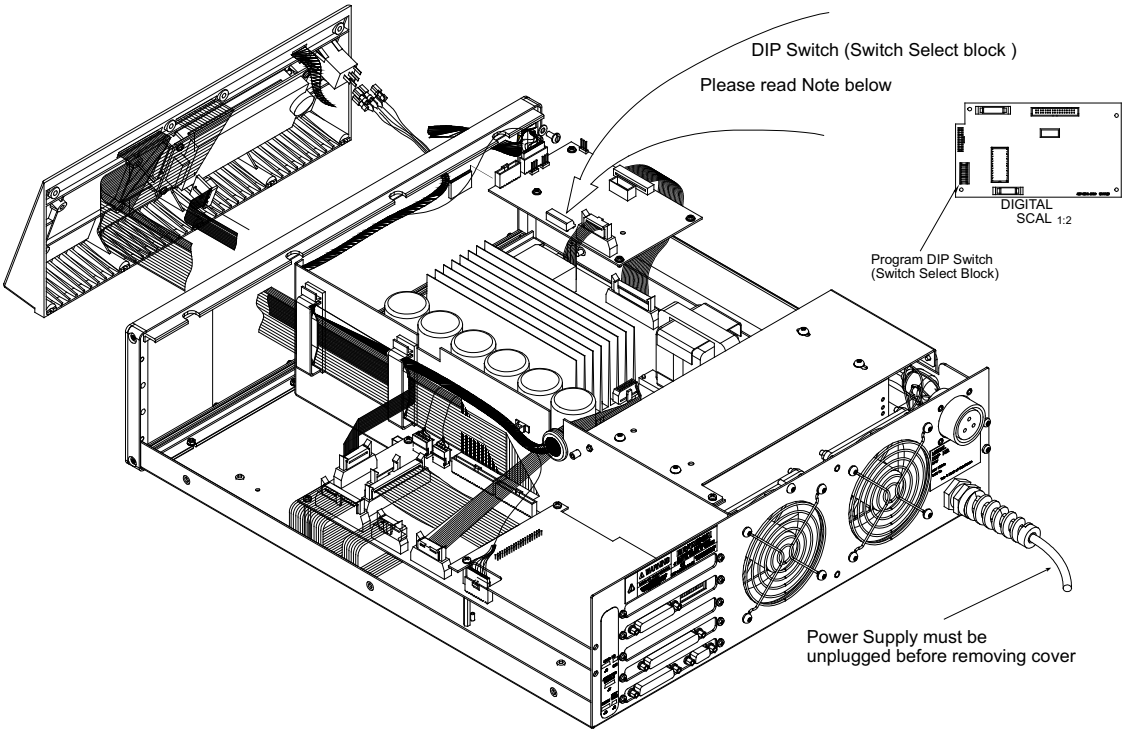
4.6.6 Power Supply Module Options DIP Switch

When using the Digital UPS in automated configurations, it might be necessary to open the Power Supply and change the DIP (Dual In-line Package) switches on the power module. DIP switches change the Seek and Start functions and can affect the Amplitude Control functions. Operations using the Digital UPS are software controlled.

CAUTION	
	The components in the Power Supply are subject to damage from electro-static discharge. When working inside the Power Supply, use a grounded wrist strap and minimize your movement to reduce the possibility of damage due to static electricity.

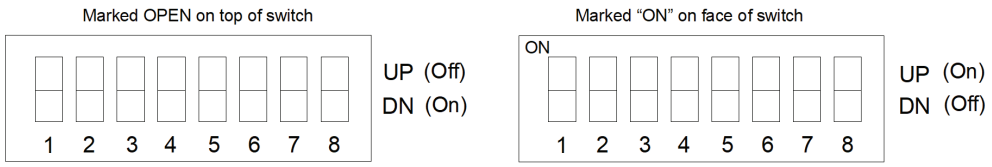
WARNING	
	Unplug the Power Supply (if previously connected) and wait at least two (2) minutes before opening the Power Supply case. Hazardous Voltages exist and are stored in the system.

Figure 4.14 DIP Switch Location on the Analog and Digital Power Supply Module



NOTICE	
	There are two variations of the DIP switch and each is used interchangeably. The switch will have either "Open" or "On" printed on it to indicate position function. Carefully note the orientation of the On/Off positions as illustrated, since one orientation is exactly the opposite of the other.

Figure 4.15 Switch Select Block



NOTICE	
	This switch controls circuits which are based on negative logic. This means that turning a switch position to Off will actually be turning a circuit on, and turning a switch position to On will be turning a circuit off.

To change Power Supply Module DIP switch settings, take the following steps*:

Table 4.9 Changing Power Supply Module DIP switch settings

Step	Action
1	Turn off and unplug the Power Supply.
2	Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitors to discharge.
3	Open the Power Supply by removing the seven screws on the cover (three on each side, and one in the rear). Remove the cover and set it aside.
4	Locate the DIP switches and default settings as shown in Figure 4.14 DIP Switch Location on the Analog and Digital Power Supply Module.
5	Change the DIP switch settings to suit your application requirements (refer to Table 4.10 DIP Switch Settings*).

*It is not necessary to remove the Control Board to change the DIP settings.

Table 4.10 DIP Switch Settings*

Function	Options	Default Settings	Sw Pos
Seek	Seek on power-up - Checks horn frequency upon power up and stores the value in memory	Off	1
	Auto-Seek - checks horn frequency once each minute, from the time of the last activation of ultrasonics	On (This default setting renders Auto-Seek inoperative)	2
	Auto-Seek duration - indicates the length of time the Auto-Seek function is active	On = short Off = standard	3
	Store at end of weld - updates horn frequency memory at the end of each weld	Off	4
NOT USED			5

Table 4.10 DIP Switch Settings*

Function	Options	Default Settings	Sw Pos
Amplitude Control	**NOTICE** DIP 6 must be in the Off position.	Off	6
Start	Short - sets ramp time to 10 ms.	7-On 8-On	7 - 8
	Medium - sets ramp time to 35 ms.	7-Off 8-On	7 - 8
	Standard - sets ramp time to 80 ms*.	7-On 8-Off	7 - 8
	Long - sets ramp time to 105 ms.	7-Off 8-Off	7 - 8

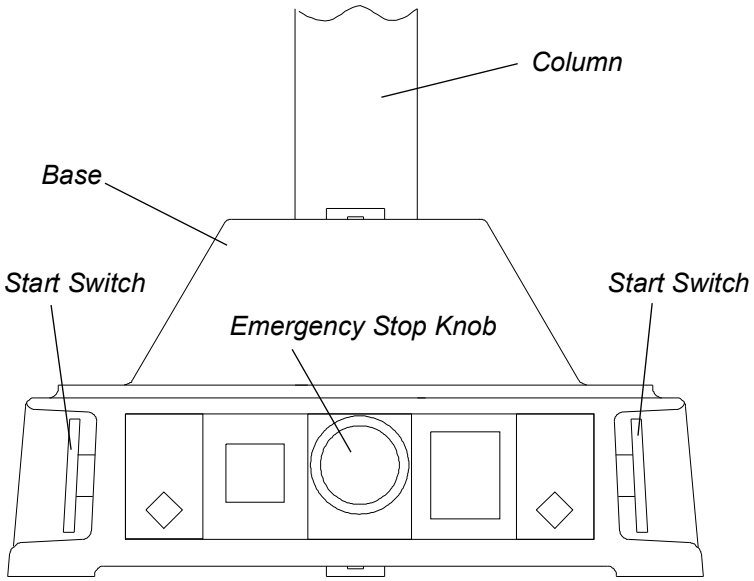
*Refer to Figure 4.15

4.7 Guards and Safety Equipment

4.7.1 Emergency Stop Control

If you use the Emergency Stop button on the Actuator to terminate a weld, twist the button to reset it. (The welder will not operate until this button is reset.) You must then press Reset at the power supply. If you are running automation, you can use external reset that is connected to your User I/O board.

Figure 4.16 Actuator Emergency Stop Button



If you are using an Emergency Stop signal from the Start Switch cable, you must clear the Emergency Stop condition before the System will operate.

WARNING	
	The Emergency Stop should be engaged prior to removing the door.

The 2000 Series control system has been designed to conform to the safety requirements of NFPA 79, EN 60204-1 and CFR 1910.212.

Two Hand Control of the 2000 Series control system has been designed to comply with Type 3 of NFPA, and Type III of EN 60204-1.

The Emergency Stop functions as a category 0 stop of both NFPA 79 and EN 60204-1.

4.8 Rack Mount Installation

If the system is Rack Mounted, you need to order the Rack Mount handle kit. The kit includes two rack mounting handles and two corner pieces, which support the handles and provide the rack mount interface.

CAUTION	
	The Rack Mount handle kit does NOT support the power supply in the rack. The weight of the power supply must be supported by integral brackets of the rack itself.

NOTICE	
	Do not permanently remove the Cover from the Power Supply because it is required for proper system cooling.

Figure 4.17 Detail of Rack Mount Handle Kit Assembly

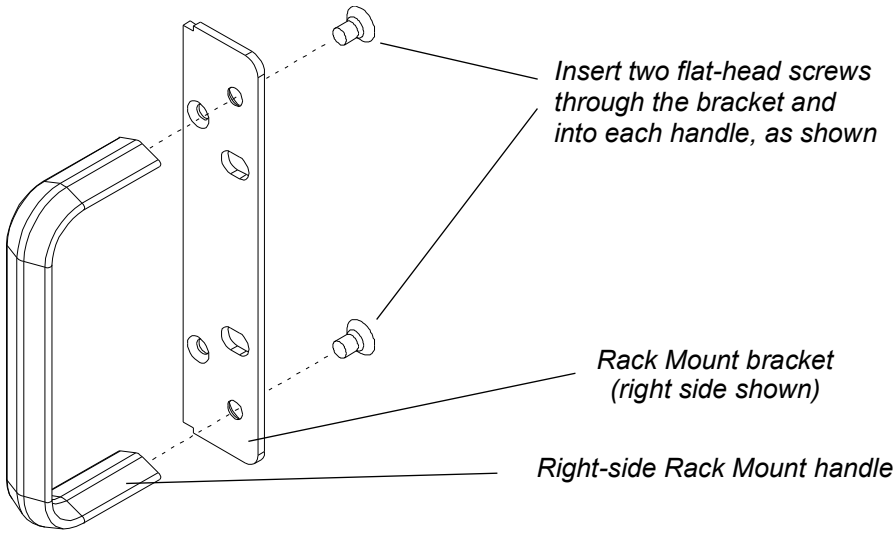


Table 4.11 Rack Mount Handle Kit Assembly

Step	Action
1	Order and obtain the Rack Mount kit for your Power Supply. The brackets in the Kit are designed for standard 19-inch rack mounting options.
2	From the front corners of the Power Supply, remove the corner trim pieces by removing the two Phillips screws. Save the screws.

Table 4.11 Rack Mount Handle Kit Assembly

Step	Action
3	Noting that one side of each bracket is countersunk to accept the provided flathead screws, assemble the Rack Mount Handles as shown in Figure 4.17 Detail of Rack Mount Handle Kit Assembly. (This shows only the Right bracket and handle; the left side is a mirror-image.) Tighten the screws securely and so they are flush.
4	Re-using the screws you removed in Step 2, install the assembled Handle in place of the Front Corner pieces.
5	Save the removed hardware corner pieces.
6	When you are ready to install the unit, use the hardware from your Rack Mounting system to locate the Power Supply.

4.9 Assemble the Acoustic Stack

CAUTION	
	The following procedure must be performed by a setup person. If necessary, secure the largest portion of a square or rectangular horn in a soft jawed vise. NEVER attempt to assemble or remove a horn by holding the converter housing or the booster clamp ring in a vise.

CAUTION	
	Do not use silicone grease with Mylar washers. Use only 1 (one) Mylar washer of the correct inside and outside diameters at each interface.

Table 4.12 Tools

Tool	EDP Number
15, 20, and 30 kHz Torque Wrench Kit	101-063-787
40 kHz Torque Wrench	101-063-618
20 kHz Spanner Wrench	101-118-039
30 kHz Spanner Wrench	201-118-033
40 kHz Spanner Wrench	201-118-024
Silicone Grease	101-053-002

4.9.1 For a 20 kHz System

Table 4.13 Assembling the Acoustic Stack in a 20 kHz System

Step	Action
1	Clean the mating surfaces of the converter, booster, and horn. Remove any foreign material from the threaded holes.

Table 4.13 Assembling the Acoustic Stack in a 20 kHz System

Step	Action
2	Install the threaded stud into the top of the booster. Torque to 450 in-lbs, 50.84 Nm. If the stud is dry, apply 1 or 2 drops of a light lubricating oil before installing.
3	Install the threaded stud into the top of the horn. Torque to 450 in-lbs, 50.84 Nm. If the stud is dry, apply 1 or 2 drops of a light lubricating oil before installing.
4	Install a single Mylar washer (matching the size of the washer to the stud) to each interface.
5	Assemble the converter to the booster and the booster to the horn.
6	Torque to 220 in-lbs, 24.85 Nm. (Torque 20 kHz Solid Mount Converter to 250 in-lbs, 28.25 Nm).

4.9.2 For a 30 kHz System

Table 4.14 Assembling the Acoustic Stack in a 30 kHz System

Step	Action
1	Clean the mating surfaces of the converter, booster, and horn. Remove any foreign material from the threaded holes.
2	Apply a drop of Loctite® 290 (or equivalent) to the studs for the booster and horn.
3	Install the threaded stud into the top of the booster; torque to 290 in-lbs, 32.76 Nm, and let cure for 30 minutes.
4	Install the threaded stud into the top of the horn; torque to 290 in-lbs, 32.76 Nm, and let cure for 30 minutes.
5	Install a single Mylar washer (matching the size of the washer to the stud) to each interface.
6	Screw the converter onto the booster.
7	Torque to 185 in-lbs, 21 Nm.
8	Slide the booster/converter assembly into the adapter sleeve. Screw on the adapter sleeve ring nut and leave loose.
9	Screw the booster onto the horn.
10	Repeat Step 7.
11	Securely tighten the adapter sleeve ring nut with the spanner wrenches shipped with the sleeve assembly.

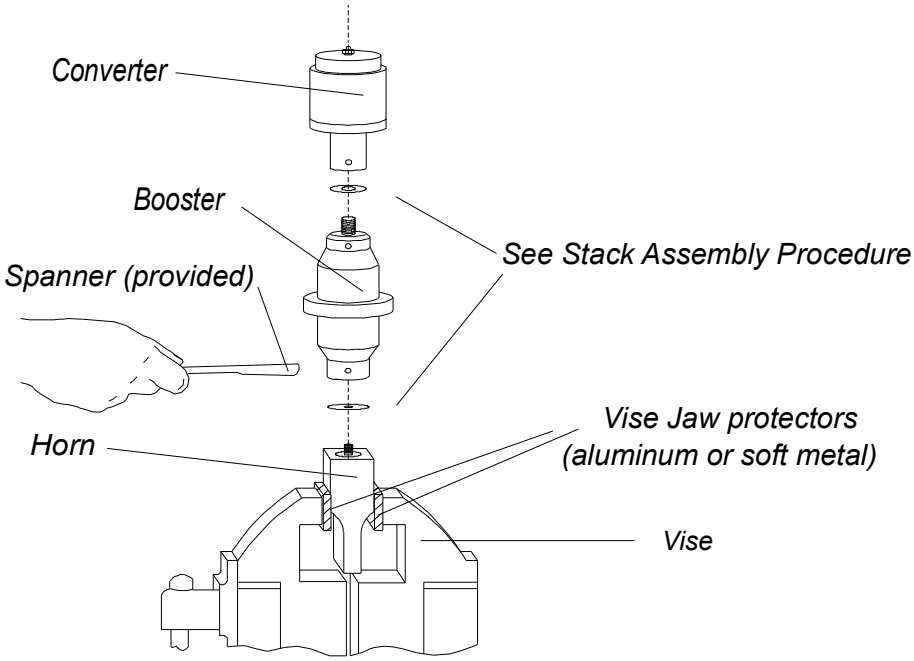
4.9.3 For a 40 kHz System

Table 4.15 Assembling the Acoustic Stack in a 40 kHz System

Step	Action
1	Clean the mating surfaces of the converter, booster, and horn. Remove any foreign material from the threaded holes.
2	Apply a drop of Loctite® 290 (or equivalent) to the studs for the booster and horn.
3	Install the threaded stud into the top of the booster; torque to 70 in-lbs, 7.91 Nm, and let cure for 30 minutes.
4	Install the threaded stud into the top of the horn; torque to 70 in-lbs, 7.91 Nm, and let cure for 30 minutes.
5	Coat each interface surface with a thin film of silicon grease – *but do not apply silicon grease to a threaded stud or tip.*
6	Screw the converter to the booster.
7	Torque to 95 in-lbs, 10.73 Nm.
8	Slide the booster/converter assembly into the adapter sleeve. Screw on the adapter sleeve ring nut and leave loose.
9	Screw the booster onto the horn.
10	Repeat Step 7.
11	Securely tighten the adapter sleeve ring nut with the spanner wrenches shipped with the sleeve assembly.

4.9.4 Assembling the Acoustic Stack (shown with rectangular horn secured in the vise)

Figure 4.18 Assembling the 20 kHz Acoustic Stack



Stack Assembly Torque Tables

NOTICE	
	The use of a Branson torque wrench or the equivalent is recommended. P/N 101-063-787 for 15, 20, and 30 kHz systems, and 101-063-618 for 40 kHz systems.

Table 4.16 Stud Torque Values

Used On	Stud Size	Torque	EDP #
20 kHz	1/2” x 20 x 1-1/4”	450 in.-lbs, 50.84 Nm.	100-098-370
20 kHz	1/2” x 20 x 1-1/2”	450 in.-lbs, 50.84 Nm.	100-098-123
30 kHz *	3/8” x 24 x 1”	290 in.-lbs, 32.76 Nm.	100-298-170R
40 kHz *	M8 x 1.25	70 in.-lbs, 7.91 Nm.	100-098-790

* Add a drop of Loctite 290 to the stud. Torque and let cure for 30 minutes before use.

4.9.5 Connecting Tip to Horn

1. Clean the mating surfaces of the horn and tip. Remove foreign matter from the threaded stud and hole.
2. Hand assemble the tip to the horn. Assemble dry. Do not use any silicone grease.
3. Use the spanner wrench and an open-end wrench (Refer to Figure 4.19) and tighten to the following torque tip specifications:

Figure 4.19 Connecting Tip to Horn

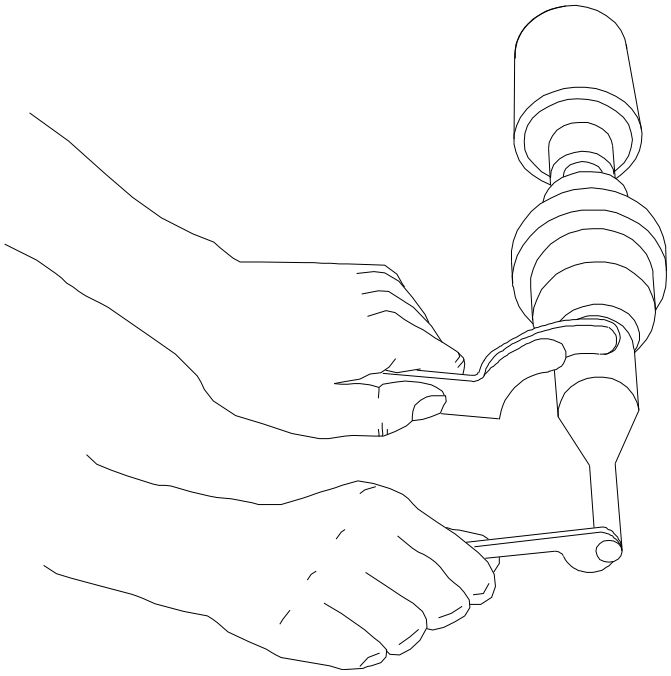


Table 4.17 Tip to Horn Torque Values

Tip Thread	Torque
1/4 - 28	110 in.-lbs, 12.42 Nm.
3/8 - 24	180 in.-lbs, 20.33 Nm.

4.10 Installing the Ultrasonic Stack in the Actuator

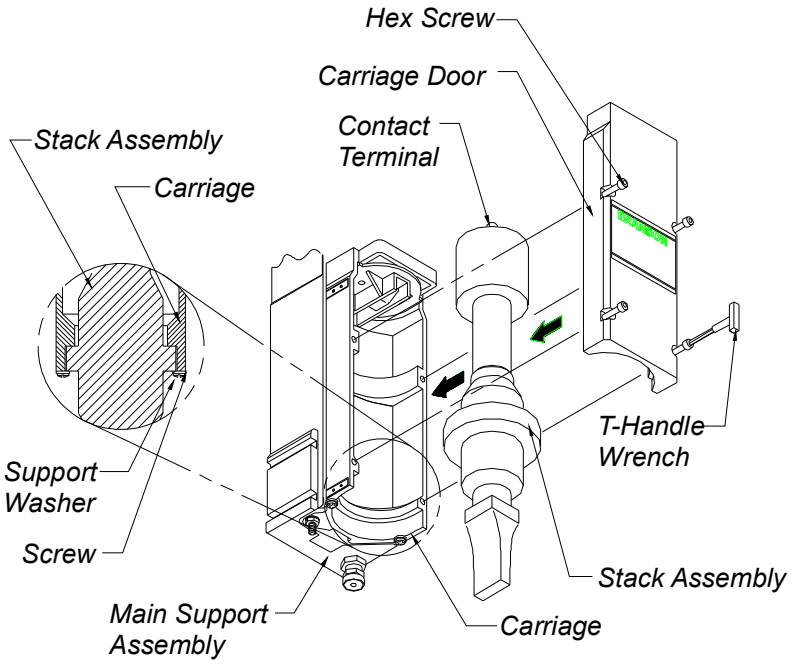
This section lists the steps and indicates the assembly procedures for various ultrasonic stacks.

4.10.1 15 kHz, 20 kHz, and 30 kHz CA Converter Stacks

The ultrasonic stack must first be assembled. To install the stack:

1. Make sure that the system power is turned off by disconnecting the power plug.
2. Engage the Emergency Stop.
3. Loosen the four door screws.
4. Pull the door straight off and set it aside.
5. Take the assembled ultrasonic stack and align the ring on the booster just above the support washer in the carriage. Firmly push the stack into place, with the acorn nut on the top of the converter making contact with the contactor in the top of the carriage.
6. Reinstall the door assembly, and start the four door screws.
7. Align the horn by rotating it, if necessary. Torque the carriage door to 20 in.-lbs to secure the stack.

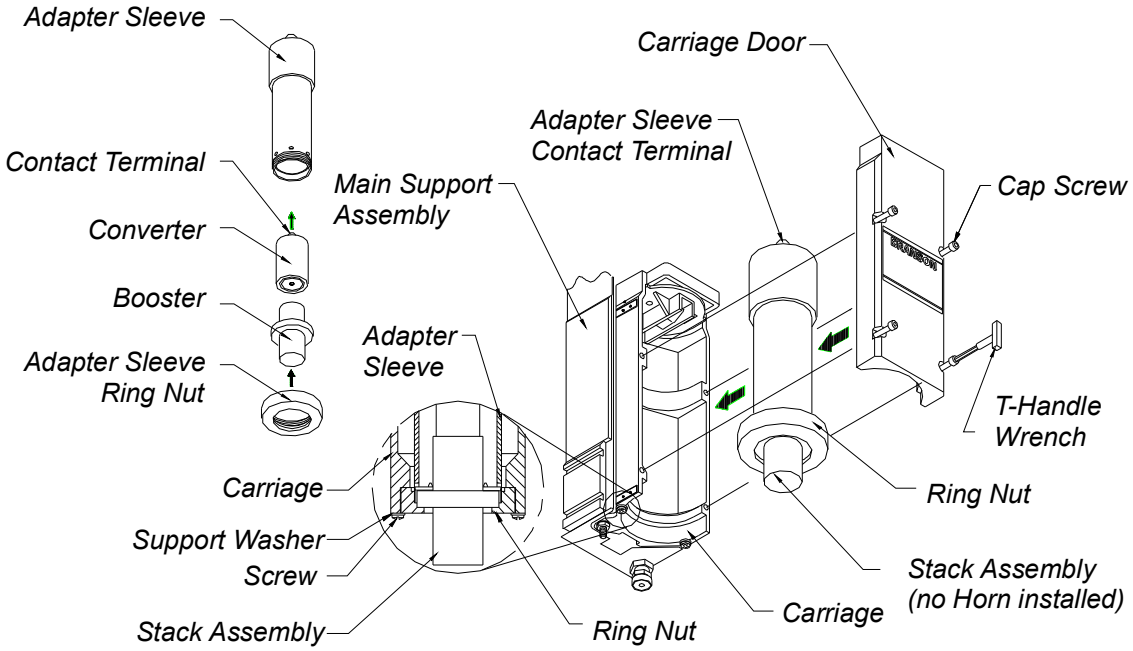
Figure 4.20 Installing a 20 kHz Stack in a Branson Actuator



4.10.2 40 kHz Stacks

1. Make sure the system power is turned off by disconnecting the power plug.
2. Place the converter/booster in the sleeve.
3. Loosen four carriage door screws.
4. Pull the door straight off and set it aside.
5. Take the assembled sleeve and align the ring nut on the booster just above the support washer in the carriage. Firmly push the sleeve into place, with the acorn nut on the top of the sleeve making contact with the contactor in the top of the carriage.

Figure 4.21 Installing the 40 kHz Stack in a Branson Actuator



6. Reinstall the door assembly, and start the four door screws.
7. Align the horn by rotating it, if necessary. Torque the carriage door to 20 in-lbs to secure the stack.

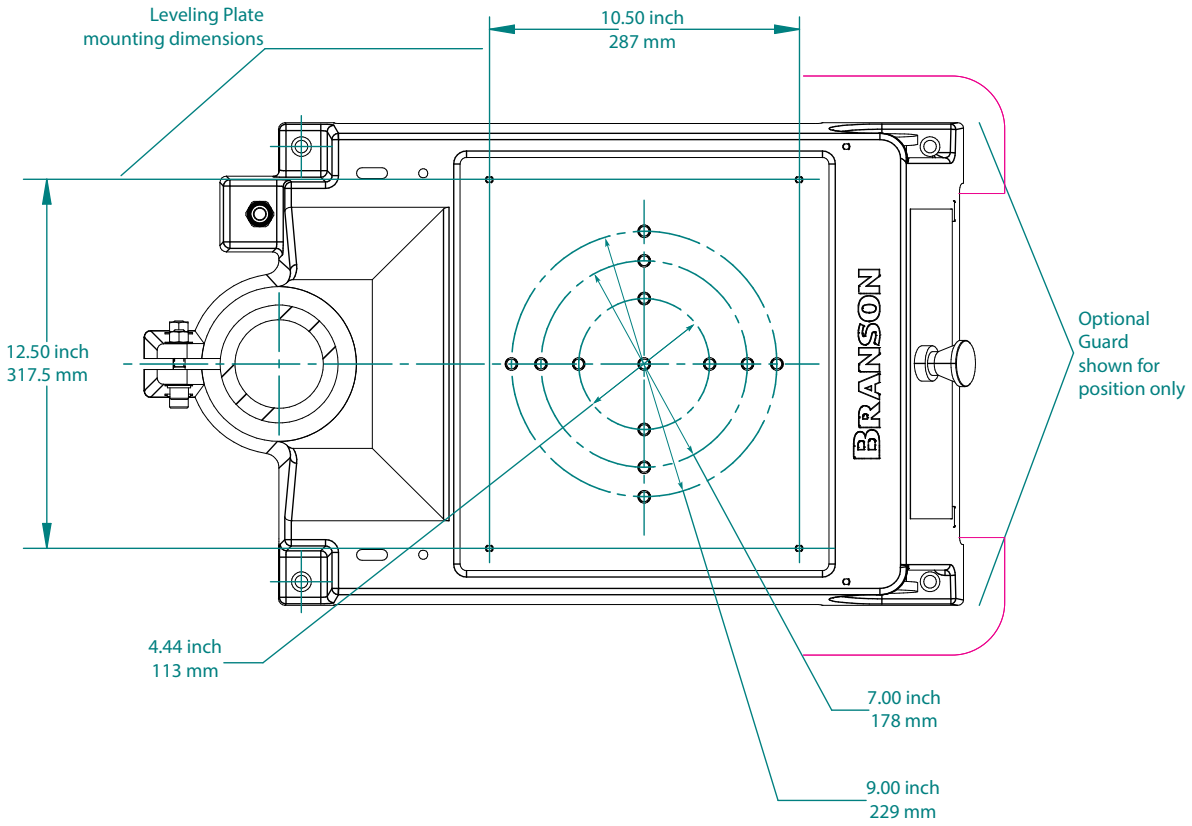
CAUTION	
	Do not attempt to hold the sleeve in a vise. It can be easily crushed or damaged.

4.10.3 Mounting the Fixture on the Branson Base (hardware and mounting holes)

The base provides mounting holes for your fixture. Mounting holes are also provided for the optional Branson leveling plate kit. The base is a tapped for metric M10-1.5 hardware. The mounting holes are arranged in three concentric bolt circles with the following dimensions.

CAUTION	
	The base is cast metal and the mounting holes can become stripped if the hardware is overtightened. Tighten your hardware only enough to prevent movement of your fixture.

Figure 4.22 Mounting Circles on Base



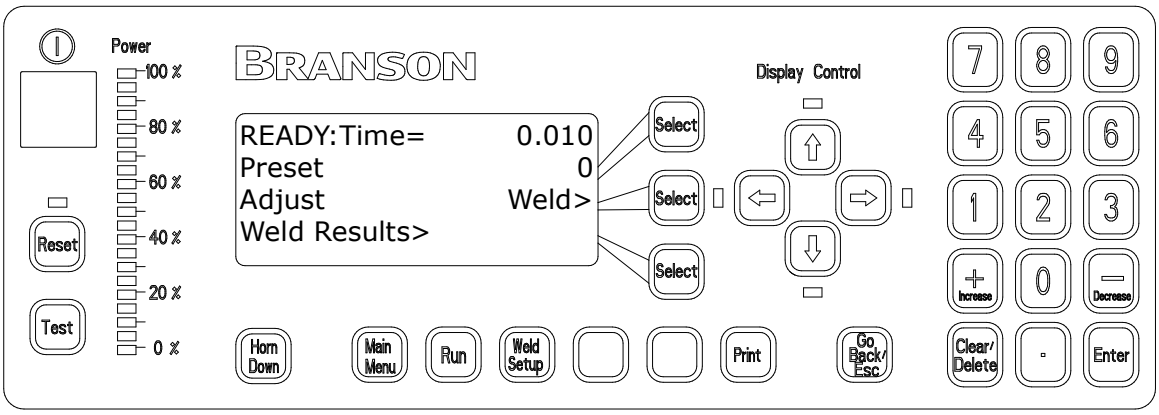
The optional guard (sometimes required with very large horns) is shown for position only. It extends several inches to either side of the base, and prevents the user from operating the welder and pinching their fingers or hands between the base and the tooling.

4.11 Testing the Installation

1. Turn on the air supply connections with the air pressure regulator set at minimum values, and verify that the system has air pressure.
2. Ensure there are no leaks in the air supply connections.
3. Turn on the power supply. The power supply will begins its normal self-check.
4. If the power supply displays an alarm message, find the alarm message definition, cause and correction in Chapter 7: Maintenance of this manual.
5. Press the **Test** button.
6. If the power supply displays an alarm message at this point, find the alarm message definition in the Maintenance section of Chapter 7: Maintenance of the power supply manual. If there are no alarm messages displayed, go on to the next step.
7. Fit a test part onto the fixture.
8. Press the **Horn Down** key and then press and hold the two start switches. The horn will descend to the fixture on the base of the Actuator. This verifies specifically that the pneumatic system is working.
9. Press the **Horn Down** key again. The horn will retract. The system should now be functional and can be set up for your application.

In summary, if the power supply does not display an alarm message and the descends and retracts correctly, your ultrasonic welder is ready for operation.

Figure 4.23 Normal Front Panel Display after Power -Up



4.12 Still Need Help? or Parts? Have Questions?

Branson is pleased that you chose our product and we are here for you! If you need assistance with your 2000-series system, call your local Branson representative or contact Branson customer service by calling the appropriate department as indicated in Table 1.2 Branson Contacts, on Section 1.5.3 Departments to Contact.

Chapter 5: Technical Specifications

5.1 Technical Specifications

5.1.1 Environmental Requirements

The 2000X Power Supply has the following environmental requirements.

Table 5.1 Environmental Requirements

Environmental Concern	Acceptable Range
Ambient Temperature	+41°F to +122°F (+5°C to +50°C)
Storage/Shipping Temperature	–13°F to +158°F (–25°C to +70°C)
Humidity	Maximum 95% non-condensing
Operating Altitude	Up to 6560 ft (2000 m)

5.1.2 Electrical Requirements

The following tables list input voltage and current requirements for the 2000X Welding System, and includes power required when it is used with Branson 2000X-series Actuators.

Table 5.2 Electrical Input Operating Voltages

Power Supply Rating	Nominal Input Operating Voltage, +/-10%
40 kHz / 400 W	100 - 120, 200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase
40 kHz / 800 W	100 - 120, 200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase
30 kHz / 750 W	100 - 120, 200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase
30 kHz / 1500 W	200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase
20 kHz / 1125 W	100 - 120, 200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase
20 kHz / 2500 W	200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase
20 kHz / 4000 W*	220 - 253 V, 50/60 Hz Single Phase

* This unit is rated at a 25% duty cycle with 5 second On time, 2000W continuous. Rated power is 4000W at 40°C.

Table 5.3 Input Current and Fuse Requirements

Model	Power	Current Rating
20 kHz	1250 W 200V - 240V	7 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse
	1250 W 100V - 120V	14 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse
	2500 W 200V - 240V	14 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse
	4000 W 220V - 240V	25 Amp Max. @ 220V / 25 Amp fuse

Table 5.3 Input Current and Fuse Requirements

Model	Power	Current Rating
30 kHz	750 W 100 - 120V	10 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse
	750 W 200 - 240V	5 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse
	1500 W 200V - 240V	10 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse
40 kHz	400 W 200V - 240V	3 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse
	400 W 100V - 120V	5 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse
	800 W 200V - 240V	5 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse
	800 W 100V - 120V	10 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse

Cycle Rate – up to 200 cpm. Cycle rate including off time is application and stack dependent.

5.1.3 Pneumatic Requirements

The factory compressed air supply must be "clean (to a 5 micron level), dry and unlubricated" air with a regulated maximum pressure of 100 psig (690 kPa). Depending on your application, the actuator requires between 35 to 100 psi. Stands include an in-line air filter. Actuators (alone) require a customer-provided air filter. A quick-disconnect fitting is suggested. Use a lockout device on the air line if required.

Air Filter

Actuators (alone) require a customer-provided air filter which protects from particulate matter of 5 microns or larger. If a stand is mounted in a position other than upright (vertical), its air filter must be relocated and oriented so its bowl is the lowest point, and the air flow across the air filter is horizontal. This may require some re-plumbing of the existing equipment at the customer site. The air filter is held in place by two screws on a bracket bolted to the actuator support, and by the factory-installed tubing.

Pneumatic Tubing and Connector

Actuator assemblies are not externally plumbed from the factory, but provide conventional 1/4-inch OD pneumatic tubing connection at the air inlet. If making connections for an actuator, or if re-plumbing your system for a new air filter location, you must use 1/4-inch OD tubing and connectors rated above 100 psi (use "Imperial Eastman® Poly-Flo Tubing 44-P-1/4", and SMC 5/16" tubing, or equivalent, and appropriate connectors).

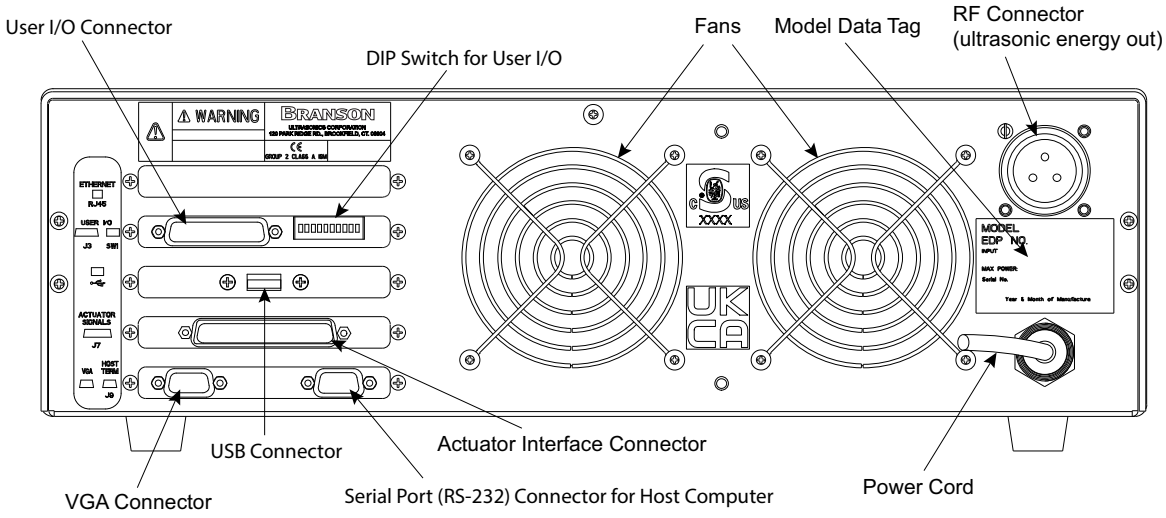
Pneumatic Connections to Actuator

All ae actuators require clean, dry input air at 100 psi filtered to 5 microns.

5.2 Physical Description

The 2000X Power Supply is part of an industrial system that can be used for ultrasonic welding, inserting, staking, spot welding, swaging, and degating thermoplastic parts, and for cutting and sealing thermoplastic fabric and film. Branson 2000X Power Supplies can operate with Actuators in manual, semi-automated, or automated systems.

Figure 5.1 Rear View of 2000X Power Supply



The 2000X-Series Power Supply is the combination of two welding system elements in one enclosure. These elements are a power source for ultrasonic energy and a major portion of the welding system control, including the user interface. The enclosure is a standard 19” rack-mount compatible design, and can be stacked or installed up to three units high. Its design is readily convertible from its normal desktop configuration for standard 19-inch rack mount applications by adding the rack mount handles (available as a kit). The Chassis is approximately 20 inches (51 cm) in depth.

The 2000’s control system is microprocessor-based, and controls the welding process while providing a level of user interface through a membrane keypad and alpha-numeric display. It employs fan-forced cooling, and is intended for horizontal placement. The front panel display and user controls are intended to be accessible from a comfortable position for an end user (operator), which means that the unit will often be installed approximately 3 to 5 feet off the floor.

The User I/O interface capabilities allow you to connect a printer or other serial or parallel device. See Section 4.6.3 User I/O Interface for further information.

5.3 Standard Modules and Components

The following sections describe the 2000X internal circuits.

5.3.1 Circuit Descriptions

The 2000X Power Supply contains the following modules:

- Line Board
- System Control Board
- Ultrasonic Power Module
- DC Power Module
- User I/O

The following sections contain descriptions for each module.

Line Board

The Line Board performs the dual function of providing RFI filtering for the line voltage input to the power supply, and controlling the electrical current surge to the ultrasonic Power Supply Module at power up until the inrush current limiter relay engages. The filtering also blocks ultrasonic signals from entering the AC main line. Additionally, the Line Board contains a soft start circuit module which limits the effects of current inrush.

System Control Board

The System Control Board controls the following functions of the Power Supply:

- Responding to start and stop signals
- Responding to alarm and reset signals
- Responding to user input from the front panel
- Activating and monitoring ultrasonics
- Provides information for Front Panel Displays
- Generate alarms
- Activate printing
- Control communications

Ultrasonic Power Supply

The Ultrasonic Power Supply Module generates ultrasonic energy at the resonant frequency of your Converter-Booster-Horn Stack. The Ultrasonic Power Supply Module is configured as either analog or digital, and each contains five main circuits. The analog power supply has one preset which calls up the factory default setting. The digital power supply has a library of locked presets which are accessible for various process parameter modifications that are unique to the power supply itself. These modifications can be named to reflect specific applications, and are loaded into memory prior to shipment from the Branson factory. The parameters of the individual presets can be modified by a Branson representative. Initially all presets are set to factory default. They are accessed via an RS232 link to the system controller.

- **320VDC Power Supply:** converts AC line voltage to +320VDC for the output power devices
- **Output circuit:** matches the impedance of the output power device to the Converter-Booster-Horn Stack; and provides feedback to the Control circuit
- **Control circuits:** perform the following functions:
  - Provide drive signal to output power device
  - Determine true percentage of ultrasonic power used over a range of amplitudes
  - Allow control of the resonant frequency
  - Control starting amplitude

- **System Protection Monitor (SPM) and AutoTune with Memory (AT/M) circuit:** do the following:
  - Provide overload protection for the Ultrasonic Power Module
  - Store operating frequency of last weld (frequency memory) and use the stored frequency as a starting point for the next weld
  - Check and update frequency memory on start-up
  - Provide switch-selective starting ramp times (Start)

DC Power Module

The Switching DC Power Module rectifies, filters, and regulates the AC voltages from the Line Transformer into DC voltages for the System Control Module. These two circuits are described below:

- **5VDC output:** provides +5VDC for the analog and digital circuitry on the System Control Module
- **24VDC output:** provides +24VDC for the System Control Module control signal and user I/O voltage

User I/O

The User I/O board provides a standard interface for automation and is accessed on the rear of the power supply at J3. It gives the customer the ability to make their own interface for automation or special control and/or special reporting needs. Electrical interface outputs may be configured for open collector mode or for signal mode (signal voltage levels as indicated) by setting the User I/O DIP switch located next to J3.

5.3.2 Converters and Boosters

A variety of converters and boosters available, for use with the 2000X Power Supply, are illustrated in the following pages.

Figure 5.2 20 kHz CR20 Converter Dimensions

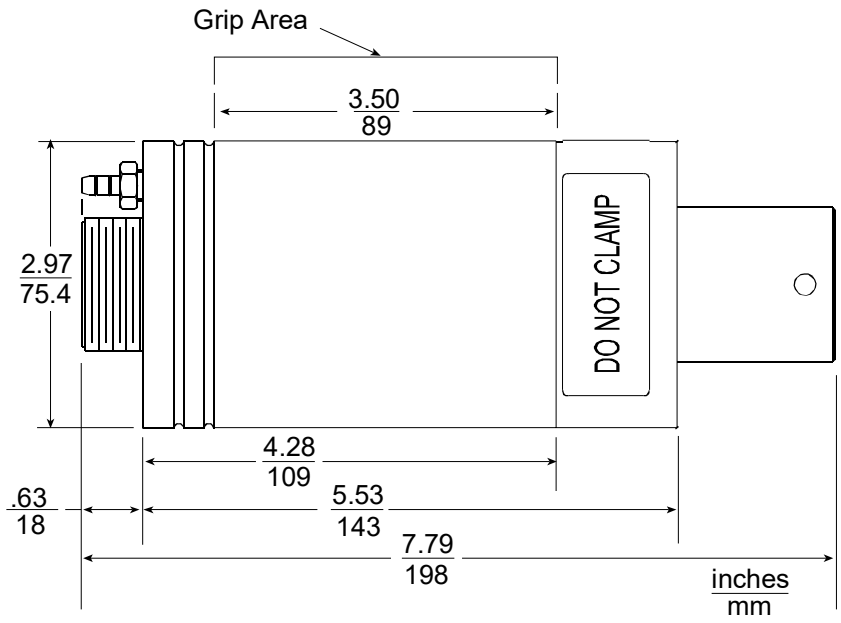


Figure 5.3 20 kHz Booster Dimensions

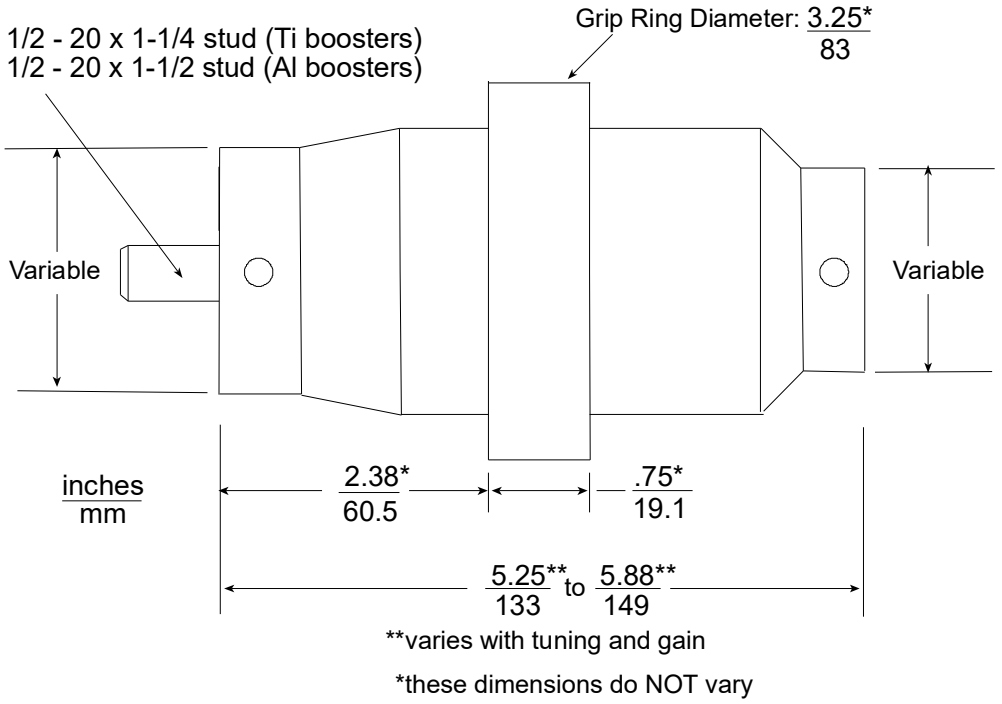


Figure 5.4 20 kHz Converter/Booster/Horn, Typical Dimensions

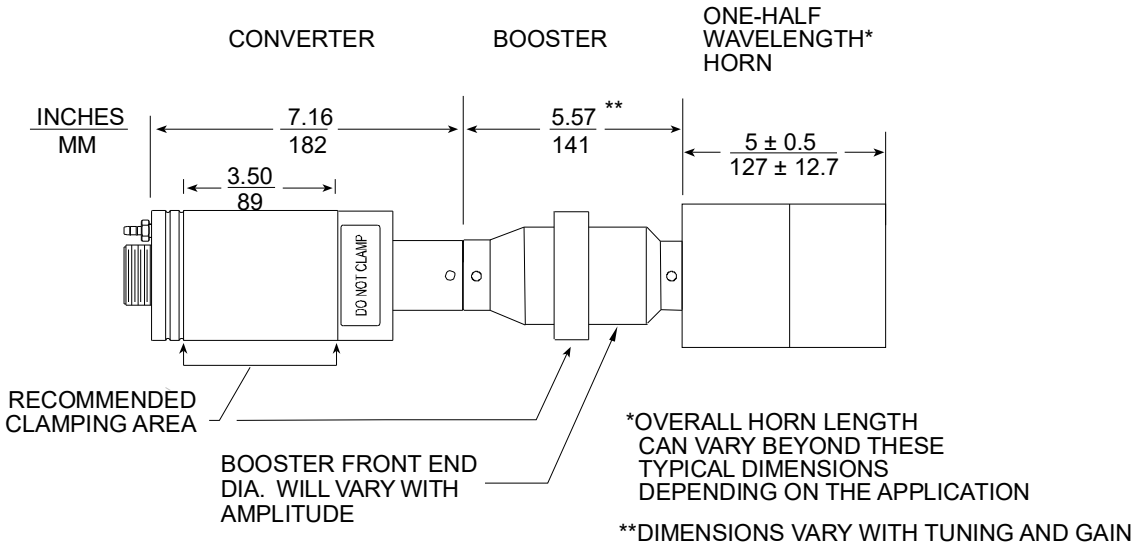
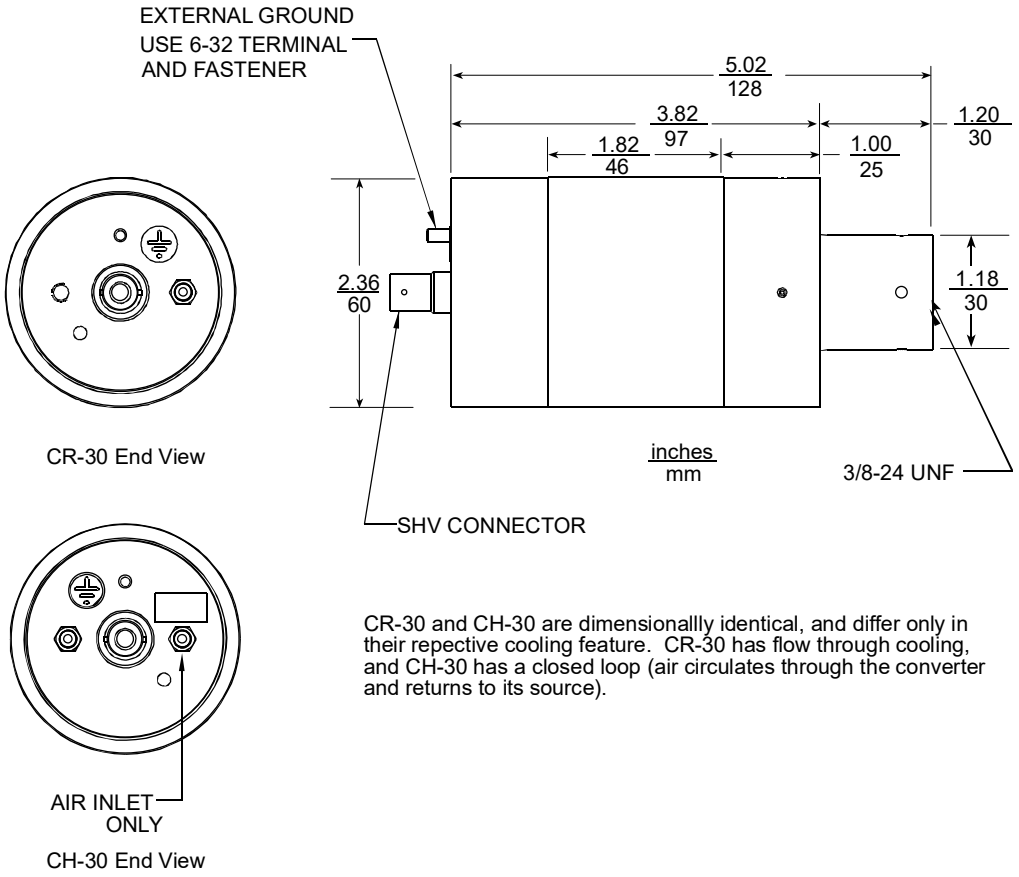


Figure 5.5 30 kHz Converter Dimensions



CR-30 and CH-30 are dimensionallly identical, and differ only in their repective cooling feature. CR-30 has flow through cooling, and CH-30 has a closed loop (air circulates through the converter and returns to its source).

Figure 5.6 30 kHz Booster Dimensions

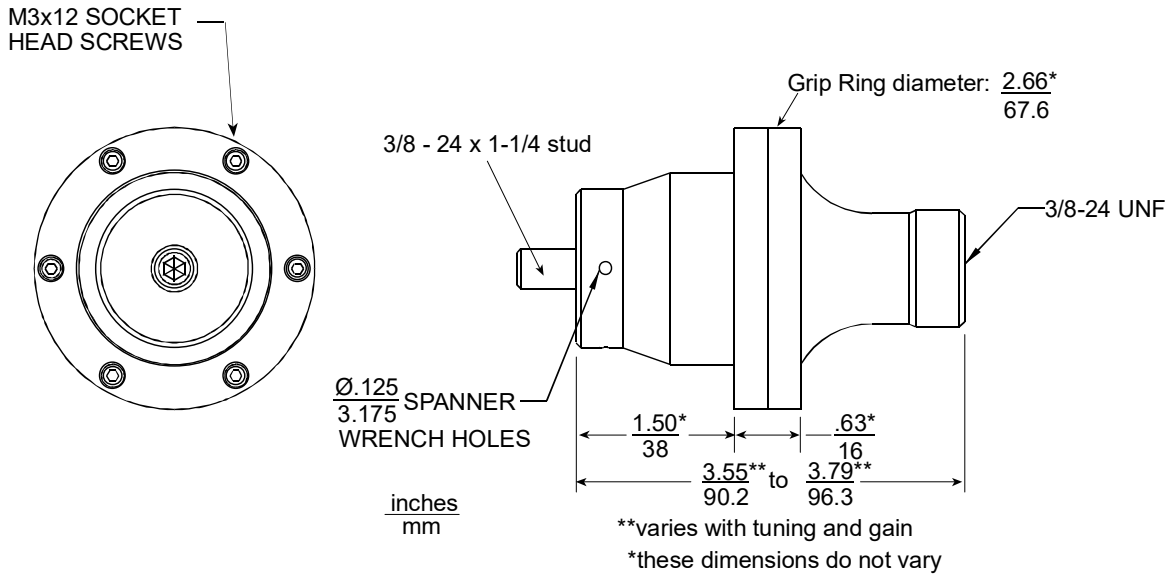


Figure 5.7 30 kHz, CA - 30 Converter with Booster

The CCA - 30 converter (EDP 159-135-114) is available in CA - 30 ConverterKit (EDP 101-063-689).
Instructions for installing must be adhered to and are included in the Installation Instructions.

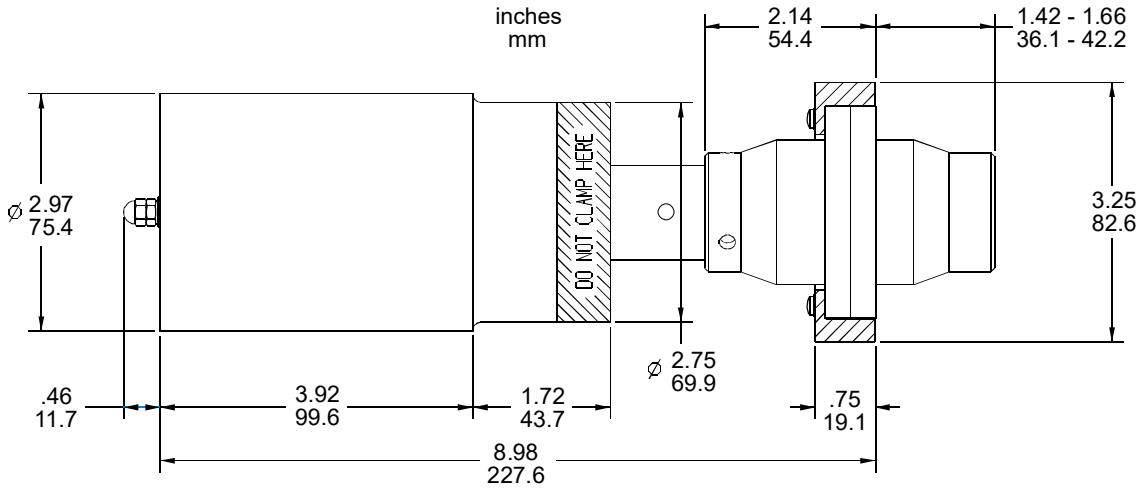


Figure 5.8 30 kHz Converter/Booster/Horn, Typical Dimensions

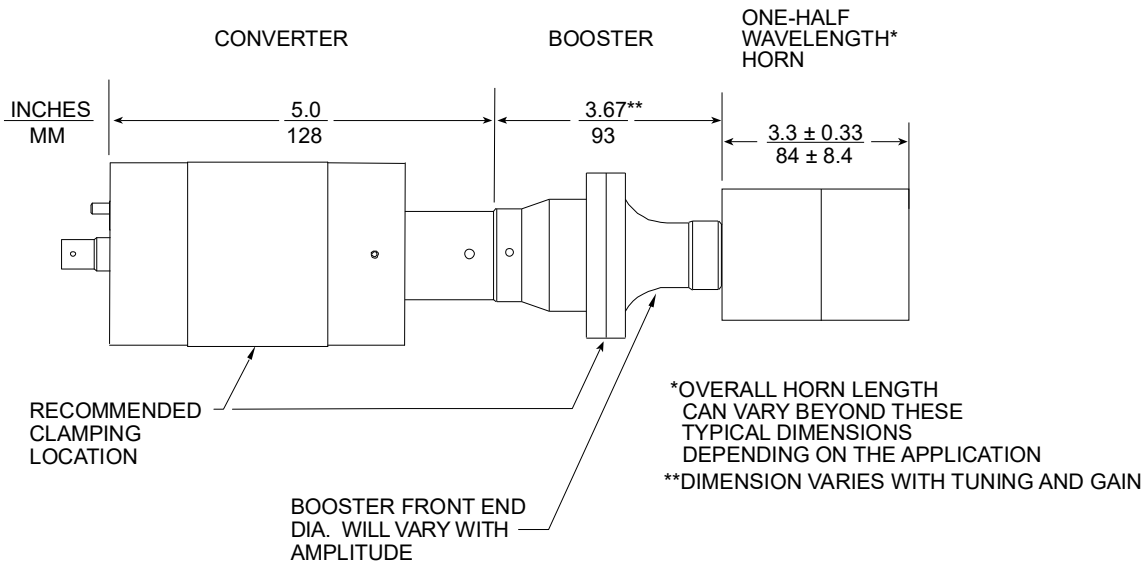


Figure 5.9 40 kHz, 4TR and 4TJ Converter Dimensions

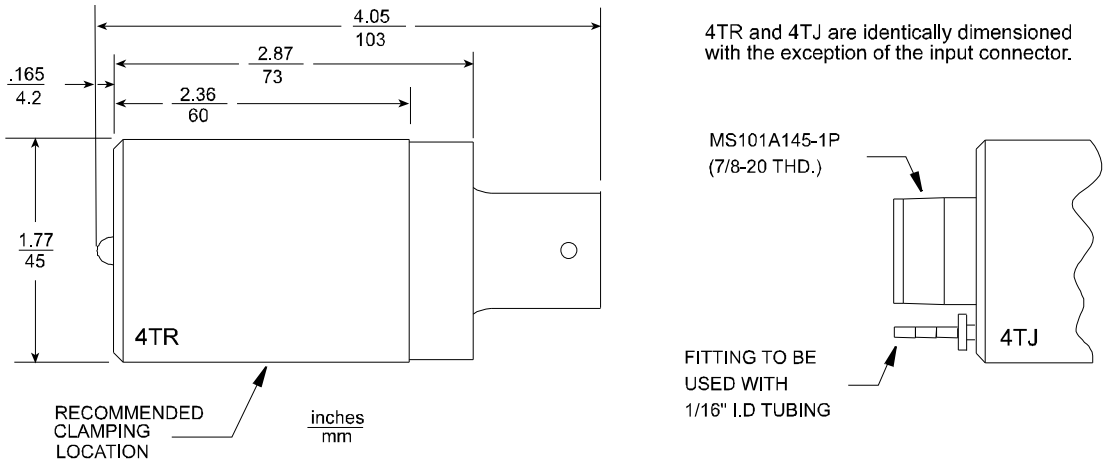


Figure 5.10 40 kHz, 4TH Converter Dimensions

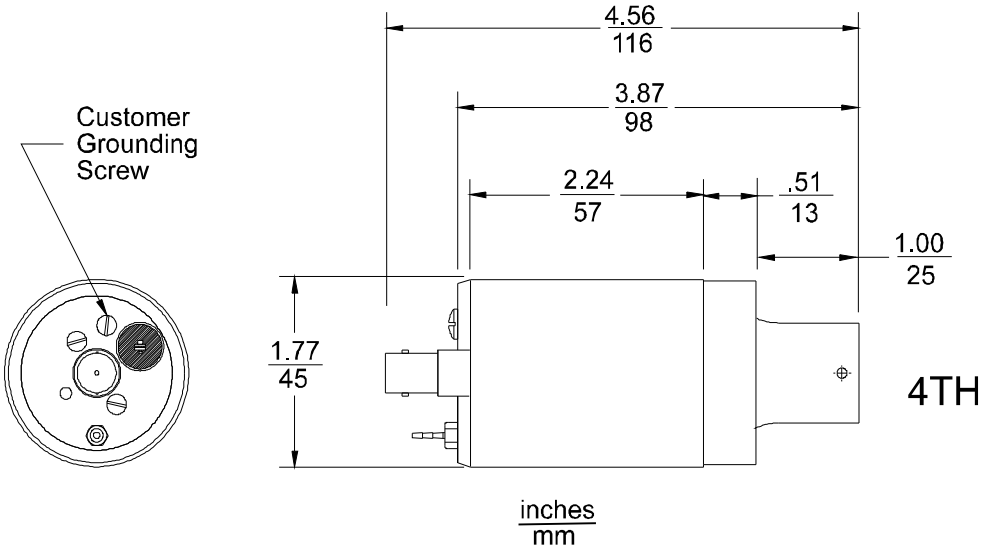


Figure 5.11 40 kHz, 4TP Converter Dimensions

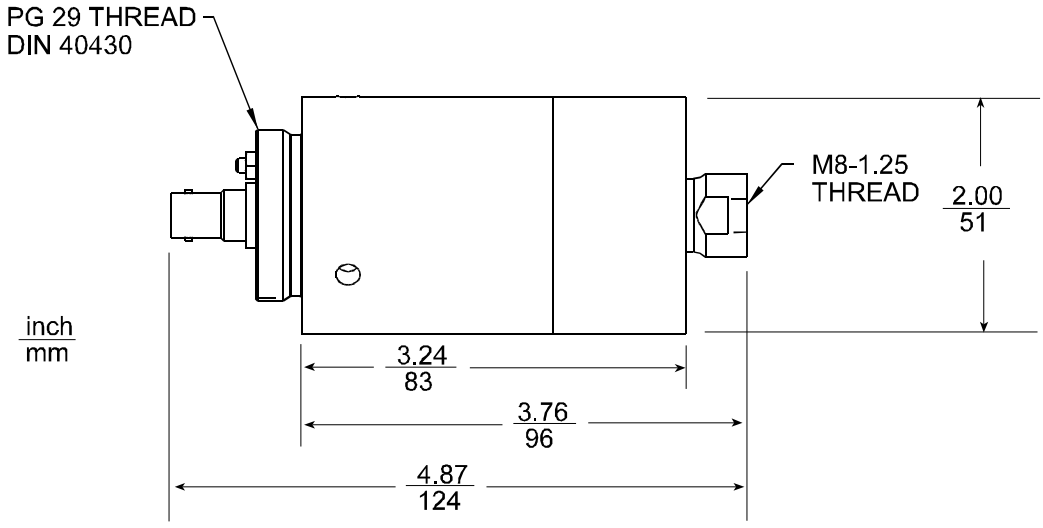


Figure 5.12 40 kHz Booster Dimensions

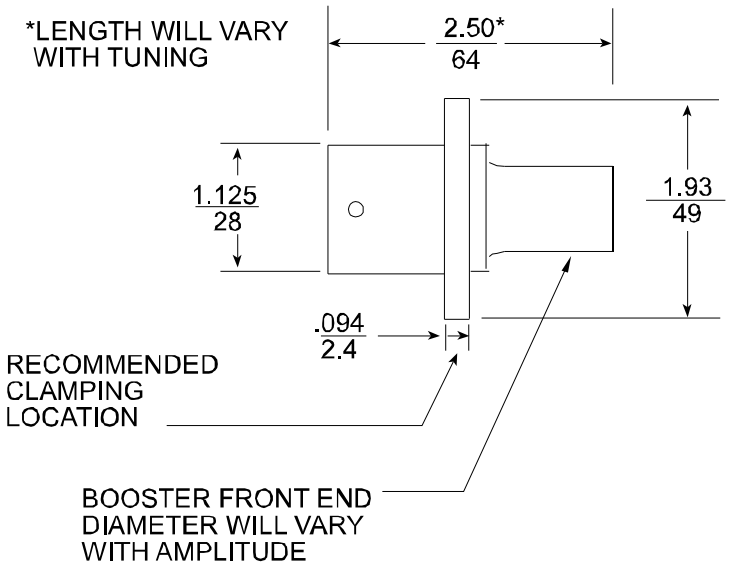
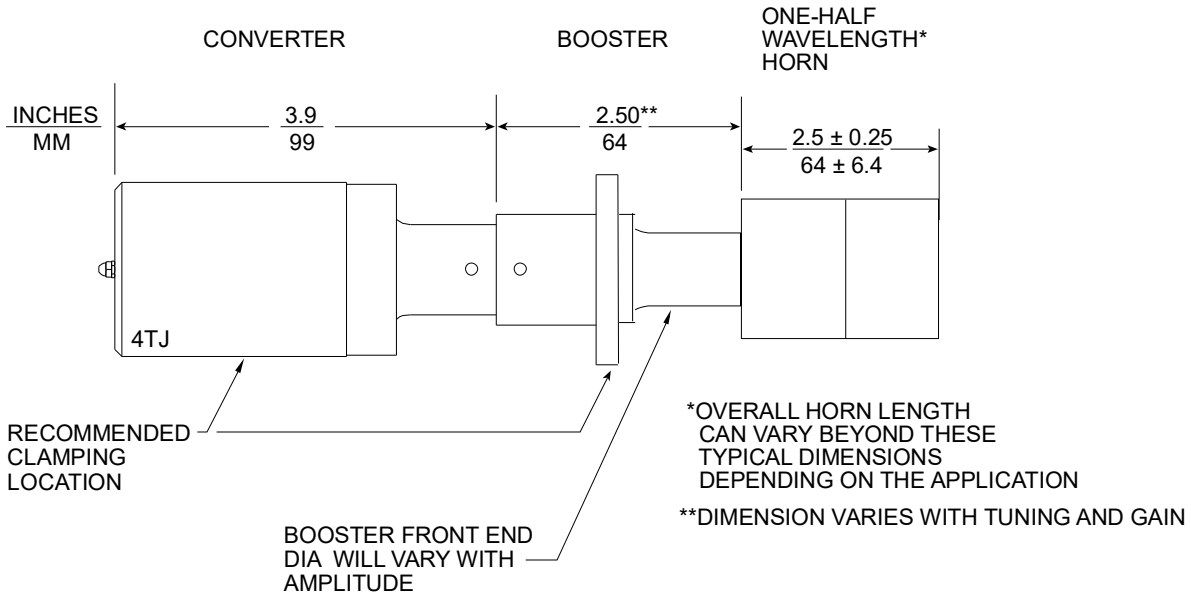


Figure 5.13 40 kHz Converter/Booster/Horn, Typical Dimensions



5.3.3 Customer-Provided Options

Options for the Power Supply include dot-matrix and inkjet printers (printers are listed in Table 4.5 Printer Compatibility).

Chapter 6: Operation

WARNING	
	High voltage is present in the 2000X Power Supply. When setting up and operating the welding system, observe the potential hazards listed below.

- Do not operate the Power Supply with the cover removed
- To prevent the possibility of electric shock, always plug the 2000X into a grounded power source
- Keep hands out from under the horn. Down-force (pressure) and ultrasonic vibrations can cause injury
- Large plastic parts can vibrate within the audible frequency range when welded. If this occurs, use hearing protectors to prevent possible injury
- Do not press the Test switch or cycle the welding system if either the RF cable or the converter is disconnected. High voltage could be present at open power connections
- When using larger horns, avoid situations in which fingers could be pinched between the horn and the fixture
- Assure power switch is in the OFF position before making or breaking any electrical or pneumatic connections to the Power Supply, Actuator or Welder

- Do not touch Ultrasonic Horn during or immediately following the welding cycle. Vibrations and heat can burn skin

CAUTION	
	Do not allow a vibrating horn to touch a metal base or metal fixture.

6.1 Front Panel Controls

You can use the keys and vacuum fluorescent display (VFD) on the front panel of the 2000X Power Supply to navigate through all of the menus, set welding values, view alarms, and print reports or information about the most recently completed weld.

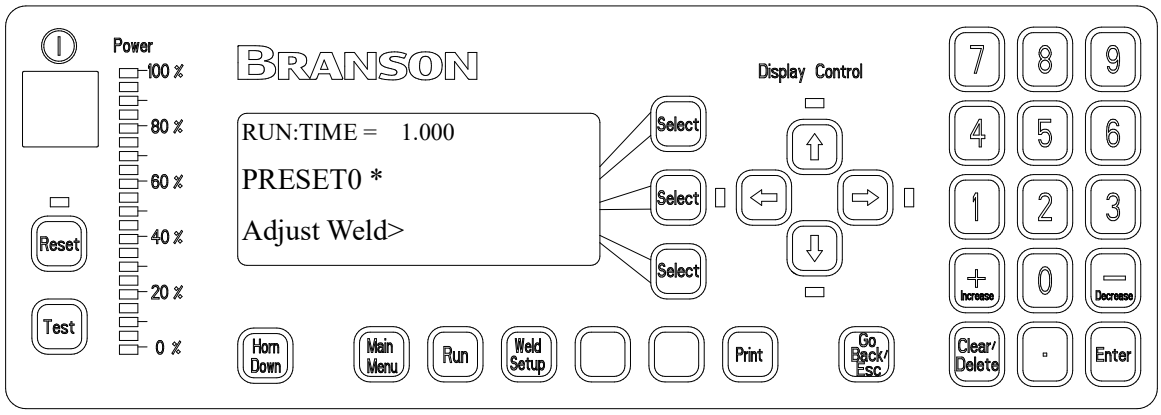
6.1.1 Front Panel Keypad and Indicators

You can perform the following navigational and operational functions on the Power Supply front panel:

- Select an item from a menu
- Change the value of a parameter using the numeric keypad
- Increase or decrease a parameter value incrementally
- Navigate up, down, right, and left through the items in each menu

This section details the navigation rules of the 2000X Power Supply.

Figure 6.1 Front Panel of the 2000X Power Supply



Any time that there is a light visible above, below, or next to a particular key on the front panel of the 2000X Power Supply, you can use that key to make a selection or navigate the menu that is shown on the display. Any time that you press a key that is not valid, you will hear an audible alarm if selected. This is not the type of alarm that will require you to reset the Power Supply.

Any time that a menu item has a caret symbol (>) shown at the end, you can press the Select key that corresponds to that menu item to see a submenu of further items. It is not necessary to press the Select key next to the Weld Results line. You can scroll through this menu by using the Right or Left Display Control keys. When a menu item has an equal sign (=) shown at the end, you can enter a numeric value for that item using the numeric keypad, or toggle to switch/select the respective function (i.e. Post Weld Seek = On). When you are changing a numeric value, you can either use the number keys on the numeric keypad or the + Increase and - Decrease keys on the numeric keypad. When you press the + Increase and - Decrease keys, the value that you are changing will be incremented or decremented by one unit of the smallest unit shown for that parameter.

Table 6.1 Navigation through the 2000X Power Supply menus

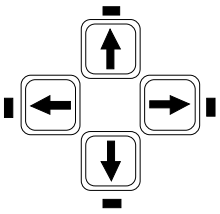
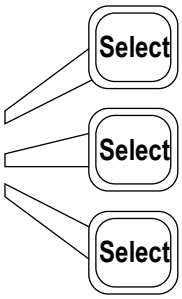
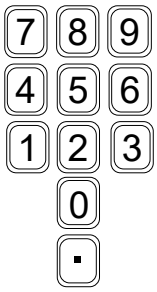
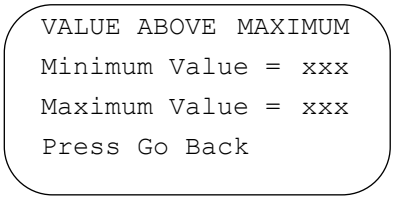
Function	Key
To view the **Run** screen on the display at any time, press the **Run** key.	
To view the **Main** menu on the display at any time, press the **Main Menu** key.	
To navigate through a menu that has more selections than can be shown at one time, press one of the **Display Control Arrow** keys. Any time that you can press one of these keys, the LED next to the key is illuminated.	
There are three **Select** keys, each of which corresponds to one of the three menu items that are available to you at any given time. To select an item on any menu, press the **Select** key that corresponds to that item.	
When you have selected a particular parameter, you will see a blinking cursor next to the value of the parameter you selected. Press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between the minimum and maximum default values and Off if it can be disabled.	
From any submenu, including a particular Weld Mode menu, press the **Go Back/Esc** key to return to one level higher in the menu structure. You can also use the **Go Back/Esc** key to return to the previous value for a particular parameter if you have made a change to the value but do not want to accept the new value. This will remove the blinking cursor from the value for that parameter. Repeated pressing of **Go Back/Esc returns you to the Main Menu.**	
To decrease the numeric value of a parameter, select it using a **Select** key and press the **– Decrease** key.	

Table 6.1 Navigation through the 2000X Power Supply menus

Function	Key
To increase the numeric value of a parameter, select it using a **Select** key and press the **+ Increase** key.	
To enter a specific numeric value for a parameter, select it using a **Select** key and use the numeric keypad. Any time that you begin using the numeric keypad, you can no longer use the **Decrease** or **Increase** keys unless you first select the **Clear** key.	
To clear the entry field for a particular parameter, select it using a **Select** key and press the **Clear/ Delete** key. The cursor remains in the most significant position of the field.	
Once you have made a change to the value of a parameter in a menu, press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad to accept the value. This removes the blinking cursor from the value for that parameter.	
When you encounter an alarm condition requiring that you reset the Power Supply before performing another weld operation, press the **Reset** key.	
When you want to check the position of your fixture by bringing the horn down to the part with no ultrasonics, press the **Horn Down** key. System Pressure setting is viewable in the display screen.	
To view the **Weld Setup** menu at any time on the display, press the Weld **Setup** key.	
If you enter a value for a parameter that is above the maximum or below the minimum allowed for that parameter, you will hear a beep and you will see the message shown at the right. Press the **Go Back/Esc** key to return to the parameter in question. Enter a valid value for the parameter and continue.	

6.1.2 Testing the Welding System

After the Power Supply is installed, you can confirm that the ultrasonic welding system is operational by following this test procedure using a sample part. This assumes that the installation has been set-up and tested per Chapter 4: Installation and Setup of this manual.

To test the Welding System after installation, do the following:

Table 6.2 Testing the Welding System after installation

Step	Action
1	On the Actuator column, adjust the stroke length to 1/4 inch or more, depending on the part you will use for the test run. Position the system to allow for a minimum stroke length of 1/8 inch or more. Lock column after adjusting.
2	Position the part in the tooling.
3	Verify that factory air supply has been connected to the actuator and turned on. (If using optional pneumatic dump valve, ensure it is turned on.)
4	On the Power Supply front panel, press the power switch. The power light on the front of the Actuator becomes illuminated.
5	On the actuator, using the Dynamic Trigger knob, set the trigger force to 2.
6	On the actuator, using the Downspeed knob, set the downspeed control to 10.
7	On the actuator, using the air pressure regulator knob, set the air pressure to 25 psi. To do this, pull the knob, rotate it clockwise to increase the air pressure and push it to lock.
8	The display should now read "Run". If the power supply displays an alarm message, find the alarm message definition, cause, and correction in Chapter 7: Maintenance of this manual. If the alarm message is Recalibrate Actuator, return to Chapter 4: Installation and Setup, and re-run the procedure in 4.10 Installing the Ultrasonic Stack in the Actuator.
9	On the Power Supply front panel, press the Run key.
10	Activate both Start Switches simultaneously, or activate your Start Signal if you are using the system in automation.
11	When the weld cycle is complete, and if the cycle has completed successfully, the cycle counter increments to show a completed cycle. The top line of the Run screen displays: RUN:XXX= whether or not the cycle was successfully completed. If the Reset LED on the Power Supply front panel flashes and the second line displays an alarm message, the test did not complete successfully. See Section 7.5 System Alarm Tables, for information on alarm conditions and how to correct them.

6.2 System Menus

6.2.1 Using the Run Screen

The **Run Screen** is a set of information displayed on the 2000X Power Supply; it shows weld status, alarms, weld count, and process information. The Run Screen appears as shown below.

```
RUN: TIME =30.000
Preset1 ABCDE123456
Adjust Weld>
Weld Results>
```

The first line of the Run Screen shows current welding mode and value of the main parameter. For example, on the Run Screen shown above, the weld mode is Time Mode and the Time is set to 30 seconds.

From the Run Screen you can observe the status of a weld cycle while it is in process. The first line cycles through the following Weld States during a weld cycle:

```
RUN: TIME =30.000
VERIFYING PRESET
EXTENDING
WELDING
HOLDING
AFTERBURST DELAY
AFTERBURST
POST SEEKING
RETRACTING
PRINTING
RUN: TIME =30.000
```

- **READY** indicates that the welder is ready to start a new cycle
- **EXTENDING** indicates that the actuator is approaching your part
- **VERIFYING PRESET** is verifying the preset you are using and the settings associated with it. This state is only displayed on the first cycle after you change a parameter
- **EXTENDING** indicates that the horn is in its down stroke
- **WELDING** indicates that ultrasonics are on
- **HOLDING** indicates that ultrasonics have turned off and pressure remains on your part. This shows only if this parameter is turned on
- **AFTERBURST DELAY** is shown only if you have set this parameter to ON, and indicates that the hold step has ended but the afterburst has not begun
- **AFTERBURST** is shown only if you have set this parameter to ON, and indicates that the afterburst of ultrasonics is on during the up stroke
- **POST SEEKING** is shown only if you have set this parameter to ON, and indicates that the Power Supply is running a 5% amplitude cycle to find its operating frequency
- **RETRACTING** indicates that the actuator is returning to the home position
- **PRINTING** indicates the welder is not ready because the print buffer will not allow another cycle to start

The following page contains a map of the menu options available from the Run Screen. Following the map is a procedure to adjust the Weld Setup and view the weld results from the Run Screen.

2000X ea Power Supply Main Menu: Run Screen

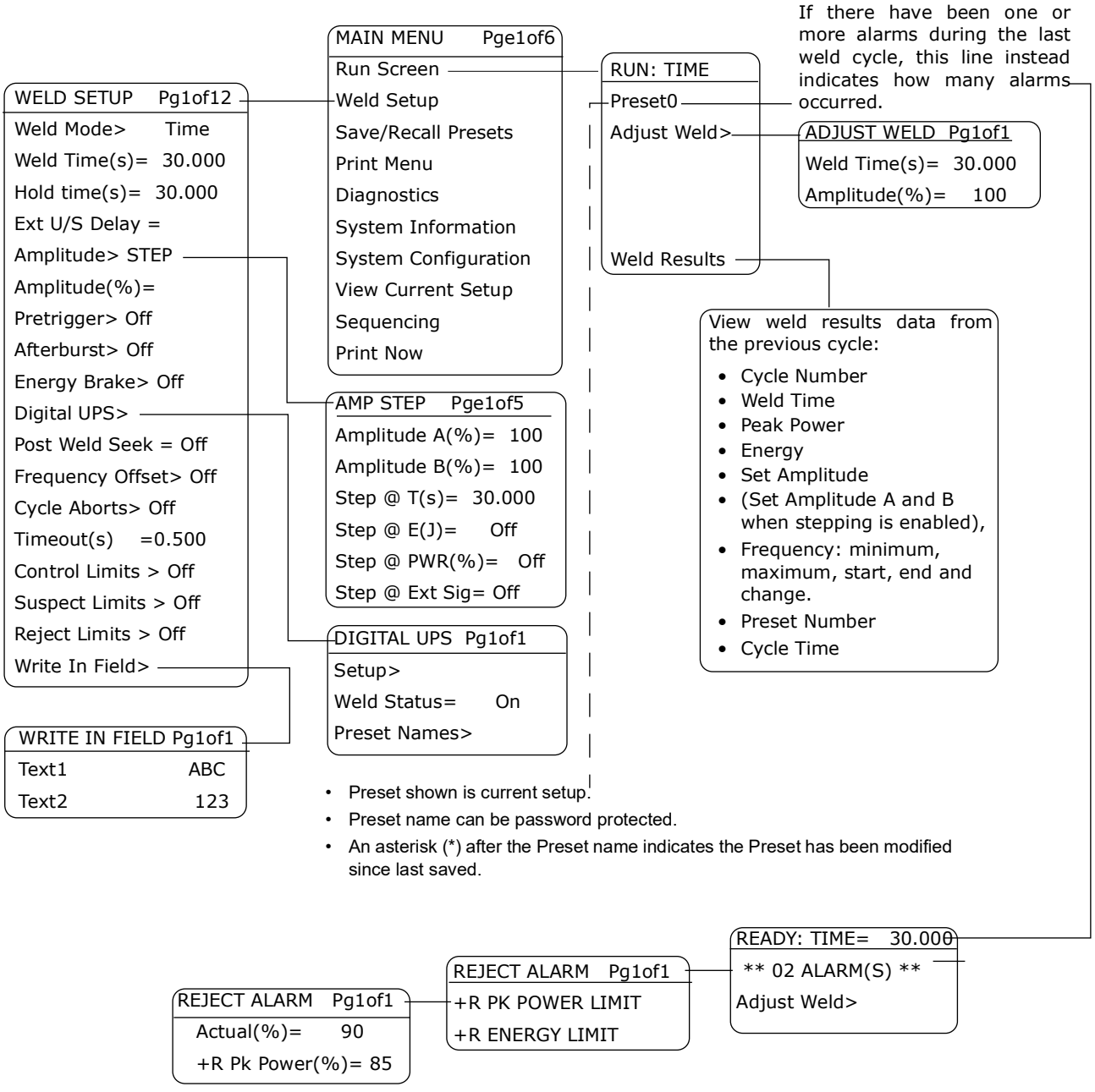


Table 6.3 Adjusting the Weld Setup from the Run Screen

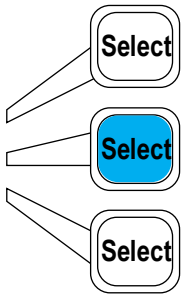
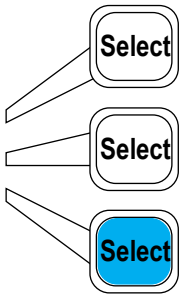
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Adjust Weld** on the **Run Screen**.	RUN:TIME =30.000 Preset1 ABCDE123456 Adjust Weld> Weld Results>	
You will see the **Adjust Weld** submenu. **NOTICE** The **Weld Time(s)** line of the **Adjust Weld** submenu is determined by the currently selected **Weld Mode** (for example, in **Energy Mode**, this line would read "Weld Energy (J = XX"). From this submenu, you can adjust the **Weld Time or Amplitude** parameters directly. If you wish to change any other weld parameters, press the **Weld Setup** key for a full setup menu.	ADJUST WELD Pg1of1 Weld Time(s) =30.000 Amplitude(%)= 100	

Table 6.4 Viewing Weld Results

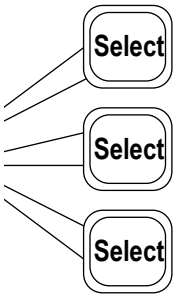
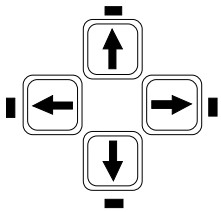
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Run** key to go to the **Run Screen**.	RUN:TIME =30.000 Preset1 ABCDE123456 Adjust Weld> Weld Results>	

Table 6.4 Viewing Weld Results

Take this action	To get this result	Key
You will see the LEDs next to the left and right arrows illuminated on the **Display Control** panel. You can press these keys to scroll right or left through a series of parameters that reflect the status of the most recent weld cycle.	RUN:TIME =30.000 Preset1 ABCDE123456 Adjust Weld> Cycle #= 12345678	
On the bottom line of the display, you can scroll through the following Weld Results parameters: **Cycle#**: the number of the last cycle completed **Time(s)**: the actual length of time the ultrasonics was on during the most recent weld cycle **Pk Pwr(%)**: the percentage of peak power of the most recent weld **Energy (J)**: the energy that was used in the most recent weld **Set Amp (%)**: The set value for amplitude of the most recent weld when amplitude stepping is off **Set Amp A (%)**: (Does not appear when stepping is enabled.) The set value for amplitude during the first part of the weld before reaching the step point when amplitude stepping is on **Set Amp B (%)**: (Does not appear when stepping is enabled.) The set value for amplitude during the second part of the weld after reaching the step point when amplitude stepping is on **Freq Min(Hz)**: the minimum frequency used during the most recent weld cycle **Freq Max(Hz)**: the maximum frequency used during the most recent weld cycle **Freq Start(Hz)**: the frequency at the start of the most recent weld cycle **Freq End(Hz)**: the frequency at the end of the most recent weld cycle **Freq Chg(Hz)**: the change in frequency during the most recent weld cycle		

6.3 Setting Primary Parameters

After analyzing your specific application, you can determine the Weld Mode to use to weld your parts. A Weld Mode is a set of parameters that governs the weld. (Contact the Branson Ultrasonics Applications Laboratory for more information on determining the best mode for welding your application. See 1.4 How to Contact Branson.)

There are four Weld Modes to choose from Time, Energy, Peak Power, and Ground Detect Modes. The following table describes each mode:

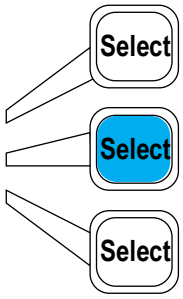
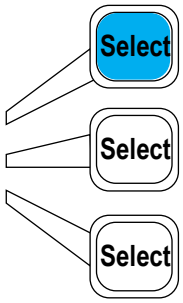
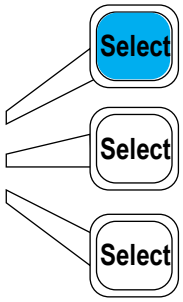
Table 6.5 Summary of Weld Modes

Weld Mode	Description
Time	You select the length of time (in seconds) that ultrasonic energy will be transmitted to your parts.
Energy*	You select the amount of energy (in Joules) that will be transmitted to your parts. (A Joule is one watt per second.)
Peak Power*	You select the peak power level (as a percentage of full power) at which the weld is terminated.
Ground Detect*	The 2000X provides ultrasonic energy until the horn comes in contact with your electrically isolated fixture or with the anvil, providing that you made an electrical connection between the actuator and your fixture or anvil.

NOTICE	
	*In these modes, timeout can be used for control limits.

To select a Weld Mode, use the keys adjacent to the LED display on the front panel of the Power Supply.

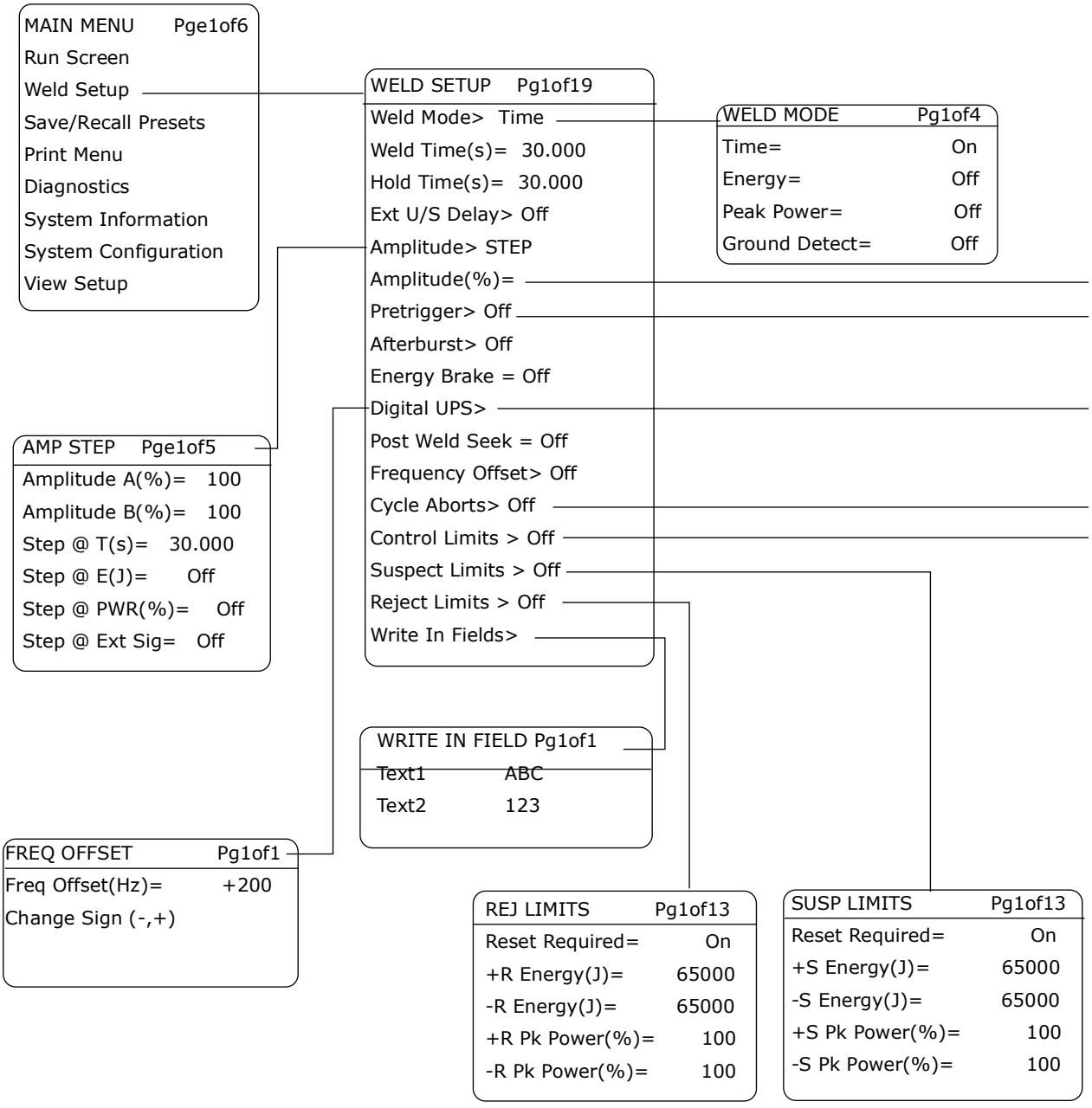
Table 6.6 Selecting a Weld Mode

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Weld Setup or press the Weld Setup key.** The mode that appears is always the mode that you used most recently.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen> Weld Setup> Save/Recall Presets	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Weld Mode>**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of19 Weld Mode> Time Weld Time(s)= 0.010 Hold Time (s)=0.010	
Use the up and down arrow keys on the **Display Control** panel to scroll through the **Weld Mode** menu. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to the Weld Mode that you want to use.	WELD MODE Pg1of4 Time =On Energy =Off Peak Power =Off	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new weld mode, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the weld mode.	TIME MODE Pg1of19 Weld Mode> Time Weld Time(s)=30.000 Hold Time(s)= 0.010	

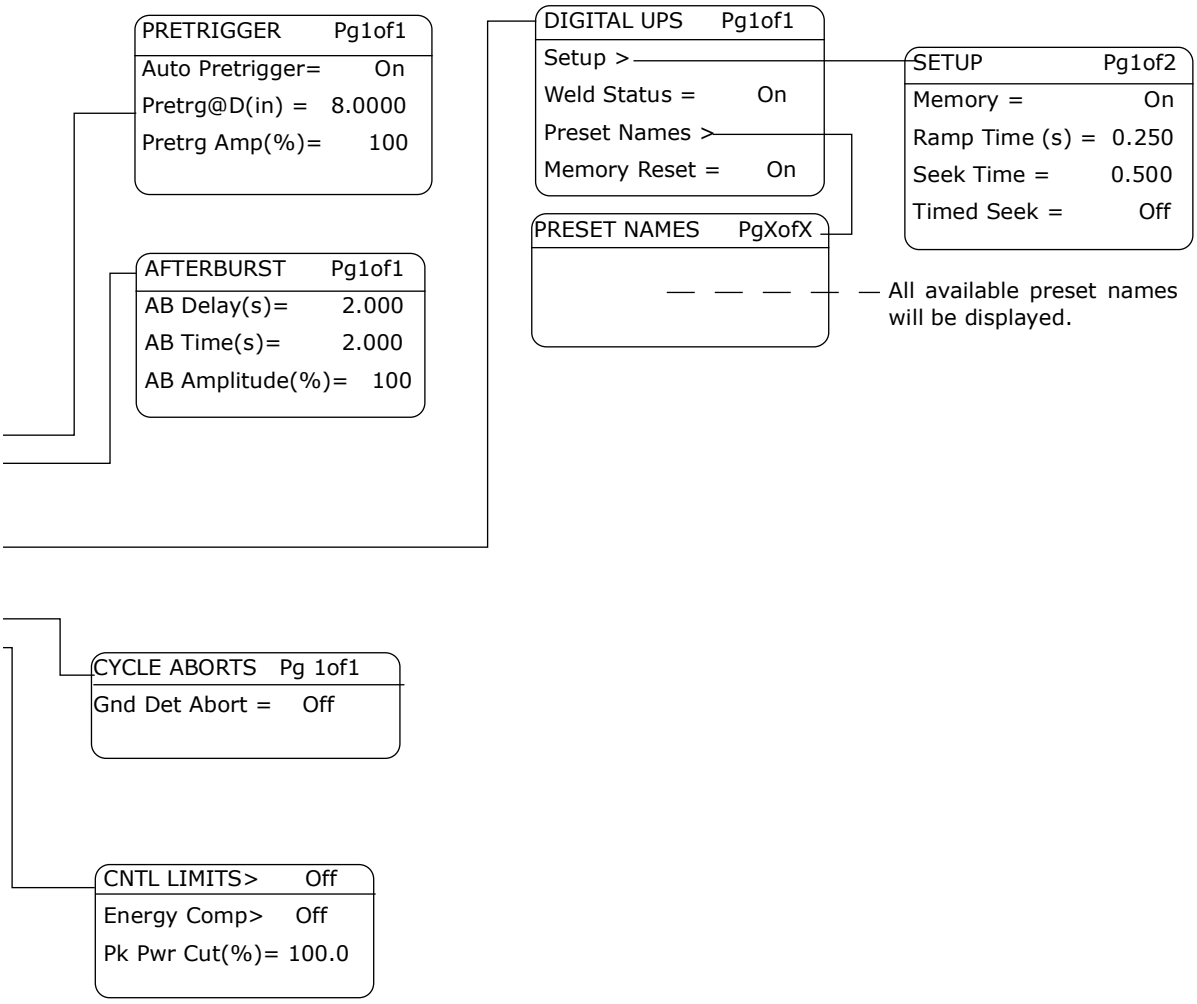
6.3.1 Using Time Weld Mode

You can use Time Mode to select the length of time that ultrasonic energy is applied to your parts. Within Time Mode, you can also select several other parameters, ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject Limits. The following two pages contain a map of the menu options in Time Mode. Procedures for setting primary parameters follow the map. For more information on setting the optional parameters within Time Mode, or any other welding mode, see 6.4 Setting Other Weld Parameters.

2000X ea Power Supply Main Menu: Weld Setup (Time Mode)



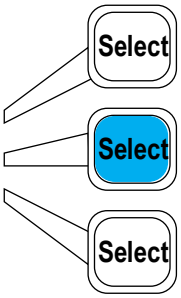
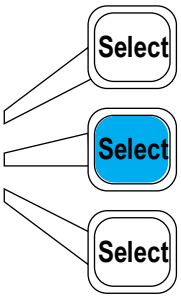
Note that values may vary with models and equipment.


PRETRIGGER Pg1of1
Auto Pretrigger= On
Pretrg@D(in) = 8.0000
Pretrg Amp(%)= 100
AFTERBURST Pg1of1
AB Delay(s)= 2.000
AB Time(s)= 2.000
AB Amplitude(%)= 100
DIGITAL UPS Pg1of1
Setup >
Weld Status = On
Preset Names >
Memory Reset = On
SETUP Pg1of2
Memory = On
Ramp Time (s) = 0.250
Seek Time = 0.500
Timed Seek = Off
PRESET NAMES PgXofX
All available preset names will be displayed.
CYCLE ABORTS Pg 1of1
Gnd Det Abort = Off
CNTL LIMITS> Off
Energy Comp> Off
Pk Pwr Cut(%)= 100.0

Setting Weld Time

You can select the length of time (in seconds) that ultrasonic energy will be transmitted to your parts.

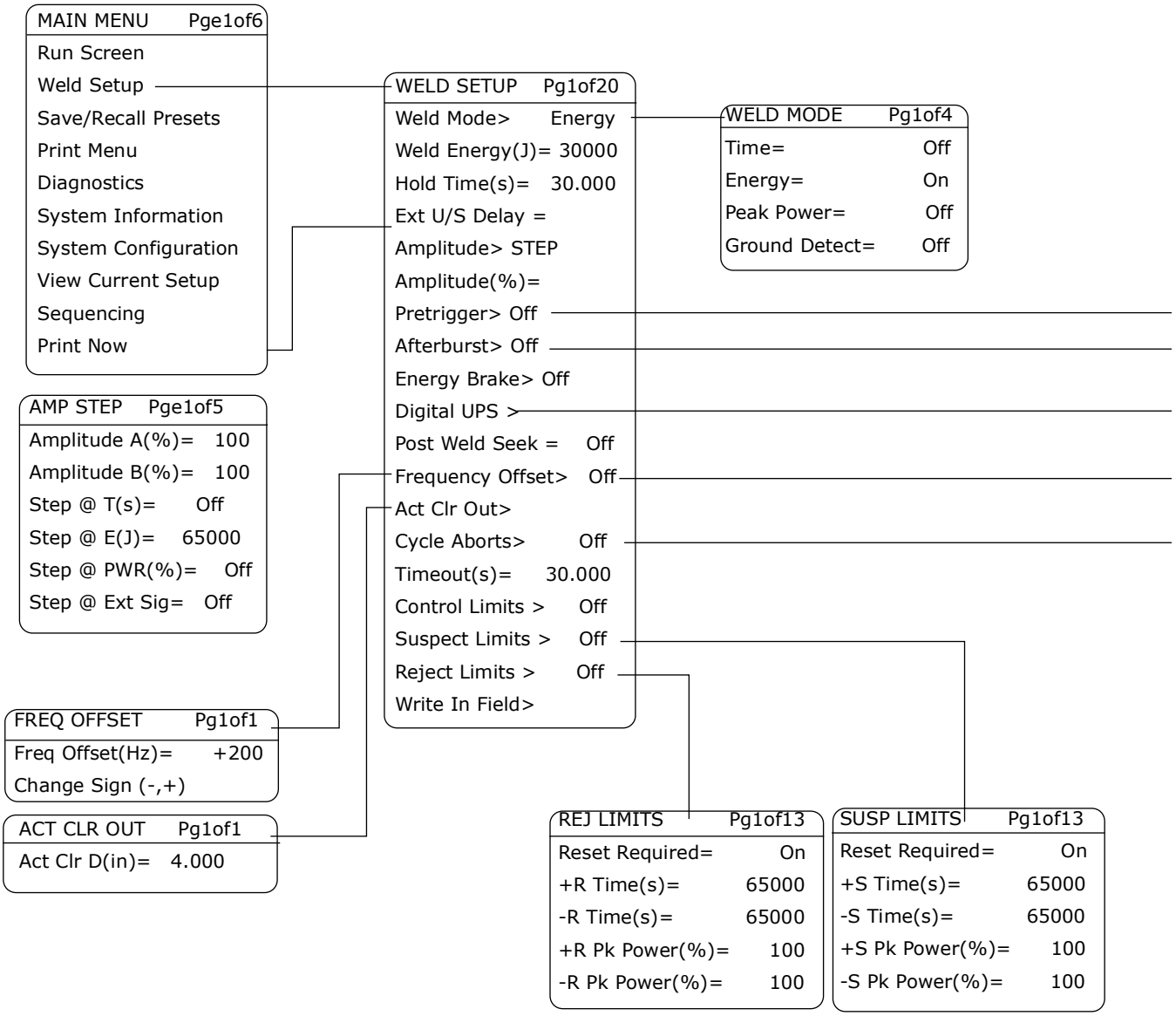
Table 6.7 Setting Welding Time

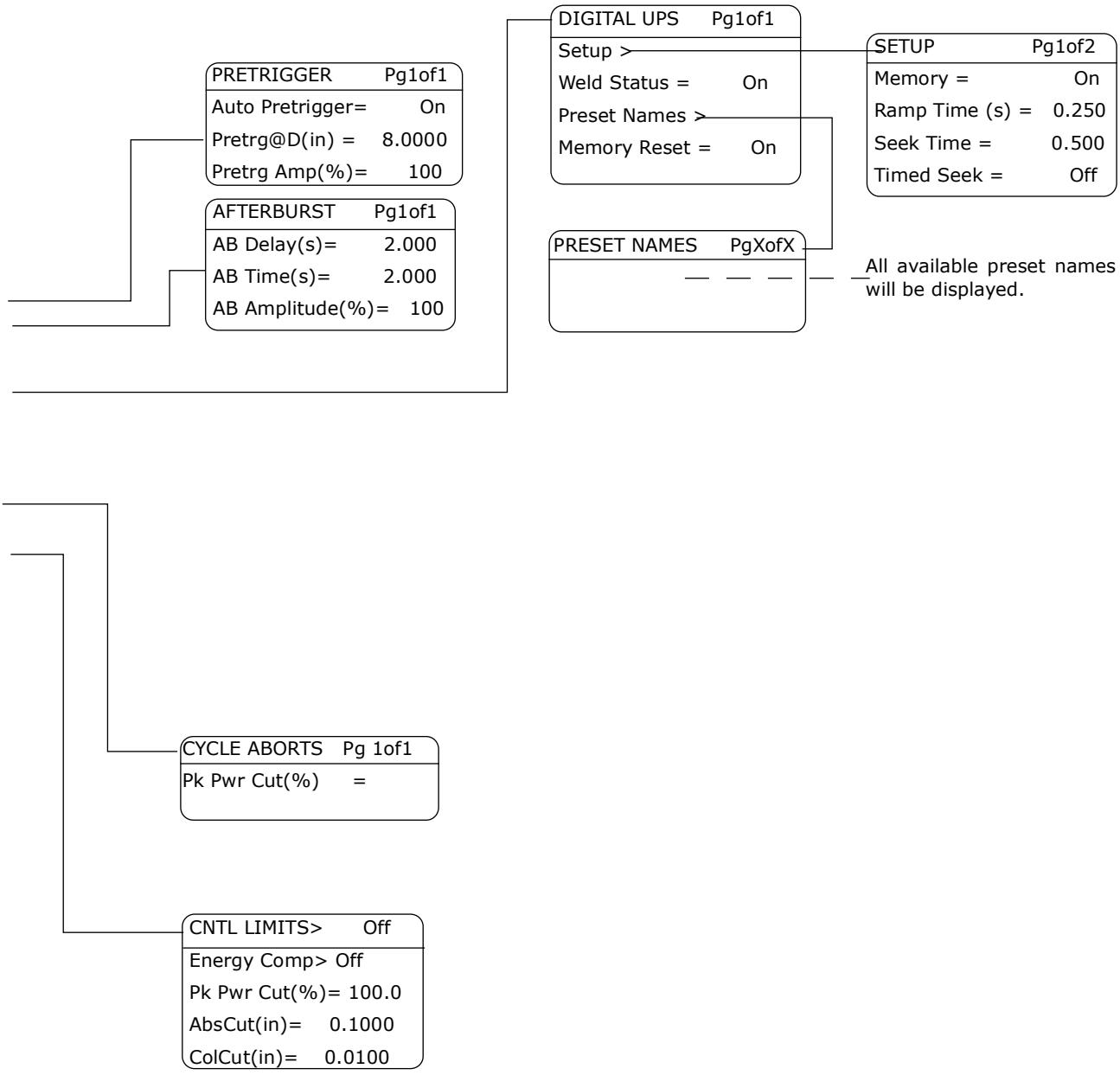
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Weld Time(s)**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of13 Weld Mode> Time Weld Time(s)= 0.010 Hold Time(s)= 0.010	
Use the numeric keypad to enter the **Weld Time** (in seconds) that you want to use, or press the same **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between the minimum (0.010 second) and maximum (30.000 seconds) values for **Weld Time**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of13 Weld Mode> Time Weld Time(s)= 1.500 Hold Time(s)= 0.010	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.	WELD SETUP Pg1of13 Weld Mode> Time Weld Time(s)= 1.500 Hold Time(s)= 0.010	

6.3.2 Using Energy Weld Mode

You can use Energy Mode to select the amount of ultrasonic energy that is applied to your parts. Within Energy Mode, you can also select several other parameters, ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject Limits. The following two pages contain a map of the menu options in Energy Mode. Procedures for setting primary parameters follow the map. For more information on setting the optional parameters within Energy Mode, or any other welding mode, see 6.4 Setting Other Weld Parameters.

2000X Power Supply Main Menu: Weld Setup (Energy Mode

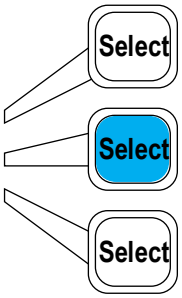
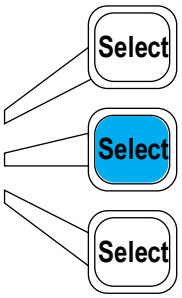



DIGITAL UPS Pg1of1
Setup >
Weld Status = On
Preset Names >
Memory Reset = On
SETUP Pg1of2
Memory = On
Ramp Time (s) = 0.250
Seek Time = 0.500
Timed Seek = Off
PRETRIGGER Pg1of1
Auto Pretrigger= On
Pretrg@D(in) = 8.0000
Pretrg Amp(%)= 100
AFTERBURST Pg1of1
AB Delay(s)= 2.000
AB Time(s)= 2.000
AB Amplitude(%)= 100
PRESET NAMES PgXofX
All available preset names will be displayed.
CYCLE ABORTS Pg 1of1
Pk Pwr Cut(%) =
CNTL LIMITS> Off
Energy Comp> Off
Pk Pwr Cut(%)= 100.0
AbsCut(in)= 0.1000
ColCut(in)= 0.0100

Setting Weld Energy

You can select the amount of ultrasonic energy (in Joules) that will be transmitted to your parts.

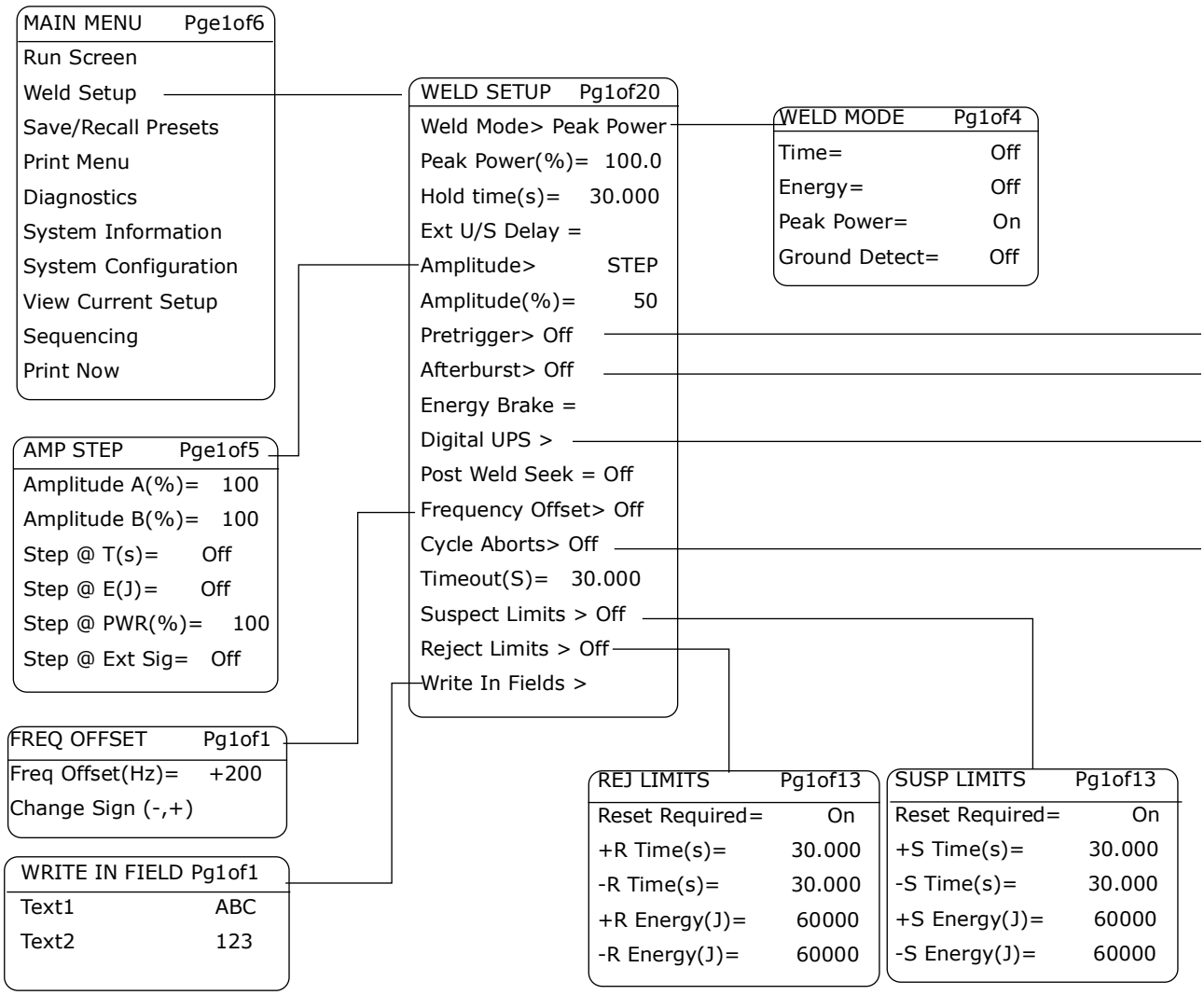
Table 6.8 Setting Weld Energy

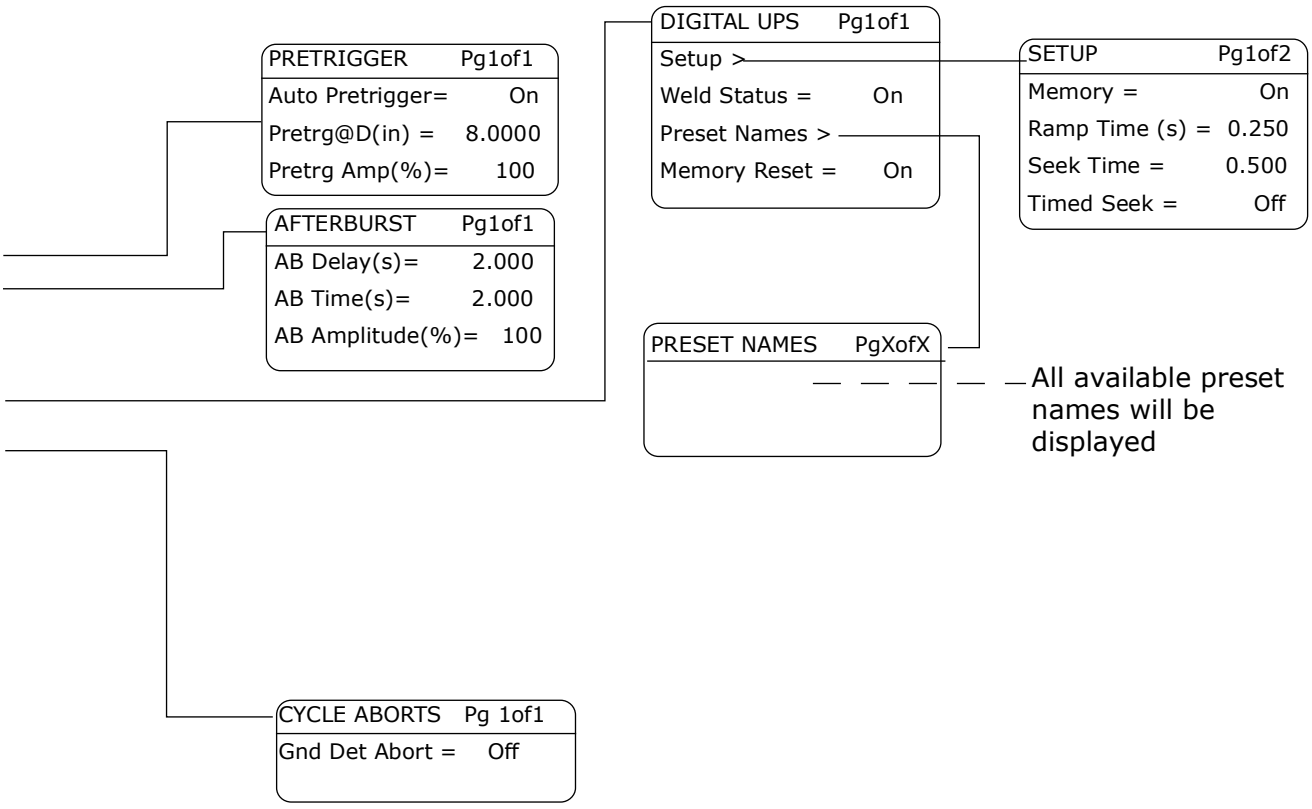
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Weld Energy(J)**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of20 Weld Mode> Energy Weld Energy(J)=30000 Hold Time (s)=30.000	
Use the numeric keypad to enter the **Weld Energy** (in Joules) that you want to use, or press the same **Select** key again to toggle between the minimum value (1.0 joule) and the maximum value (66000 joules) for **Weld Energy**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of20 Weld Mode> Energy Weld Energy(J)= 150 Hold Time(s)= 30.000	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.	WELD SETUP Pg1of20 Weld Mode> Energy Weld Energy(J)= 150 Hold Time(s)= 30.000	

6.3.3 Using Peak Power Weld Mode

You can use Peak Power Mode to select the maximum percentage of the total available power that will be used to process your welds. When the power level you set is reached, ultrasonics will be terminated. From within Peak Power Mode, you can also select several other parameters, ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject Limits. The following two pages contain a map of the menu options in Peak Power Mode. Procedures for setting primary parameters follow the map. For more information on setting the optional parameters within Energy Mode, or any other welding mode, see 6.4 Setting Other Weld Parameters.

2000X Power Supply Main Menu: Weld Setup (Peak Power Mode)

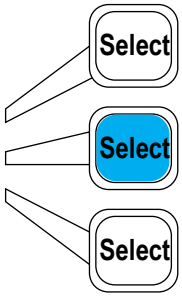
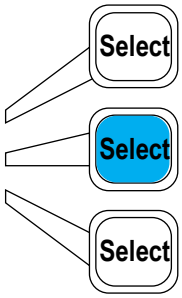



PRETRIGGER Pg1of1
Auto Pretrigger= On
Pretrg@D(in) = 8.0000
Pretrg Amp(%)= 100
AFTERBURST Pg1of1
AB Delay(s)= 2.000
AB Time(s)= 2.000
AB Amplitude(%)= 100
DIGITAL UPS Pg1of1
Setup >
Weld Status = On
Preset Names >
Memory Reset = On
SETUP Pg1of2
Memory = On
Ramp Time (s) = 0.250
Seek Time = 0.500
Timed Seek = Off
PRESET NAMES PgXofX
All available preset names will be displayed
CYCLE ABORTS Pg 1of1
Gnd Det Abort = Off

Setting the Percentage of Peak Power

You can select the maximum percentage of available power that you want to be transmitted to your part. When this power level is reached, ultrasonics will be terminated.

Table 6.9 Setting the percentage of Peak Power

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Peak Power (%)**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of20 Weld Mode>Peak Power Peak Power (%)= 100 Hold Time (s)= 0.010	
Use the numeric keypad to enter the **Peak Power** (as a percentage) that you want to use, or press the same **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between the minimum value (1%) and the maximum value (100%) for **Peak Power**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of20 Weld Mode>Peak Power Peak Power(%) = 80 Hold Time (s)= 0.010	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.	WELD SETUP Pg1of20 Weld Mode>Peak Power Peak Power(%) = 80 Hold Time (s)= 0.010	

6.3.4 USB

The two USB ports available on the 2000X power supply are USB 2.0 compliant, allowing complete plug and play, and hot attach/detach for up to 127 external devices. USB 2.0 is fully backward compatible with USB 1.1, supporting speeds of 1.5, 12 and 480 Mbps. For example, keyboard and mouse can be used with USB port at low speed, while printer and USB memory stick will run at High-speed. Information can be transferred to a PC using the Branson History Utility to view and process information. This can be useful when weld history data requirements exceed the maximum of 50 weld history data that can be stored in the power supply.

To download data and graphs, a memory stick must be inserted into the USB port (or hub). Then activate the communication through the touch screen Main Menu:

- Enter the System Configuration menu. Located on the first screen is the USB DATA button
- Once in this menu, you need to switch the USB to On
- Select the weld data or graphs you would like to download. When selecting these, the user has the option of either downloading after a weld cycle (and at what interval, i.e., 1, 5, 20, 100, etc.) and/or when an alarm takes place

The storage capacity of the memory stick will determine the number of cycles and graphs the stick can hold. The data space required for each weld cycle is: 1.0 KB for weld data and 1.35 KB for each graph.

NOTICE	
	It is important to remember to turn off the USB feature prior to removing the memory stick; an alarm will be generated if the stick is simply removed.

To view the stored data on a PC you may use Branson's history utility program History.exe. (See the following section for further information.)

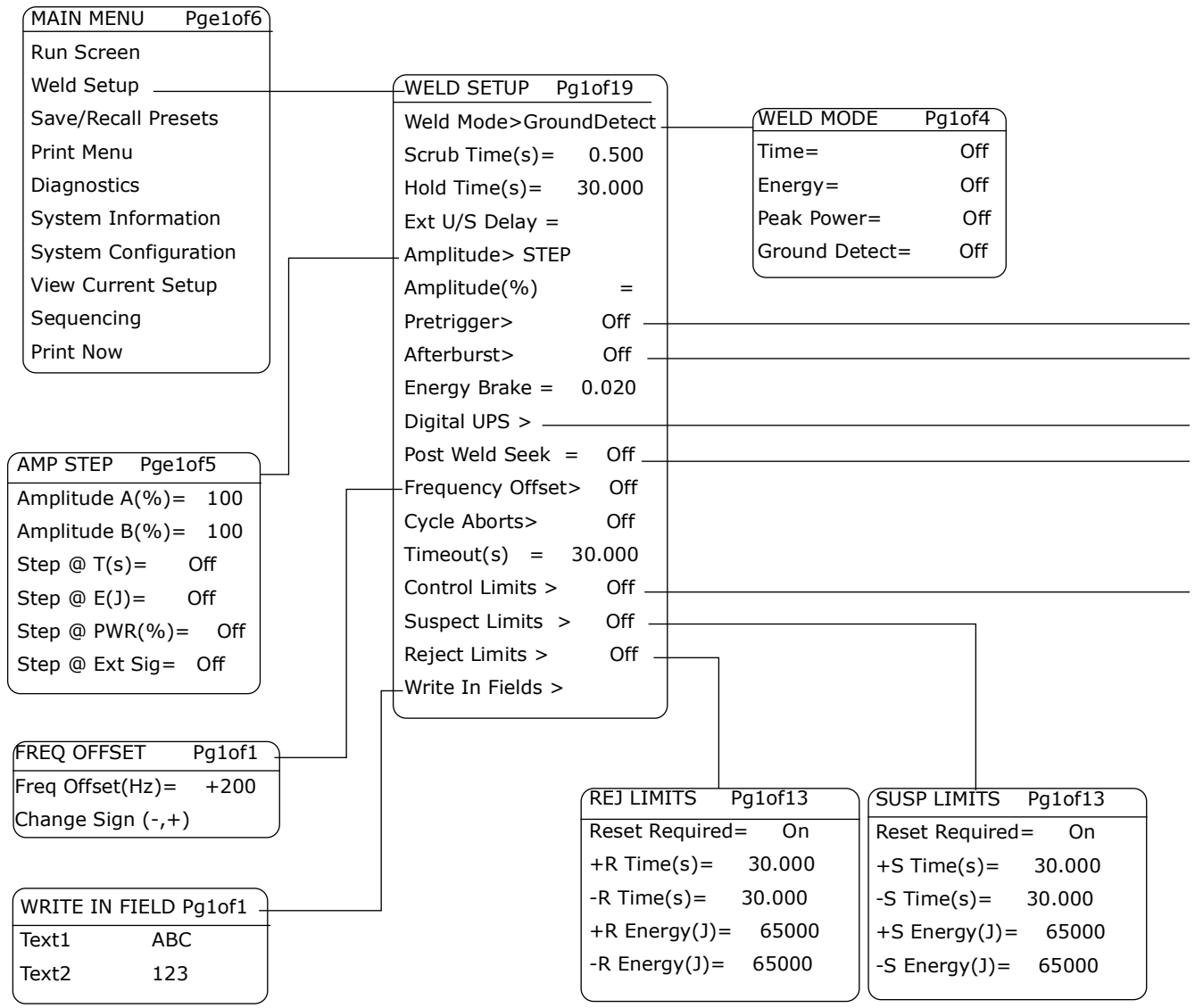
NOTICE	
	If data is not being saved, confirm your USB stick is set to drive D:.

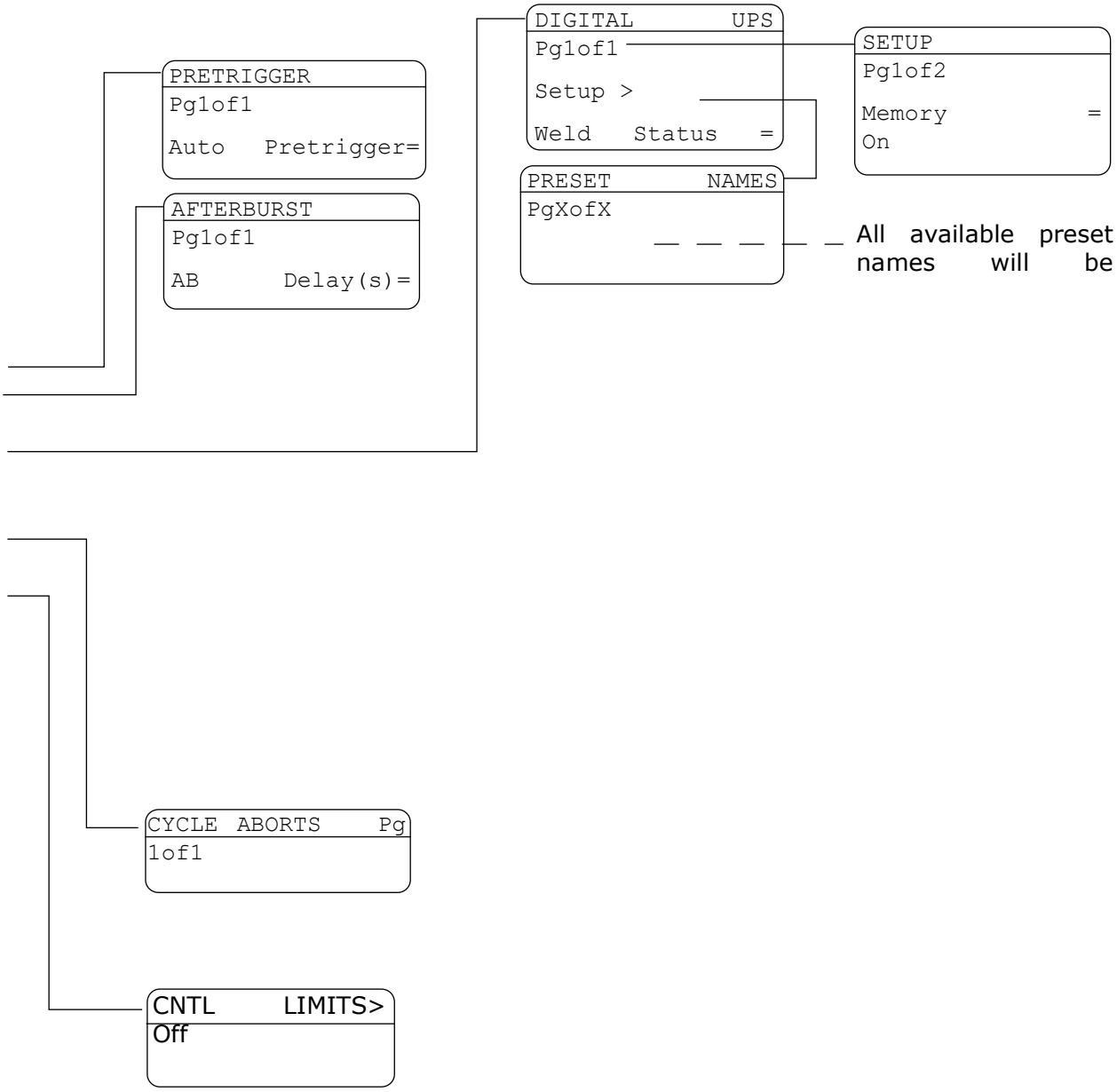
6.3.5 Using Ground Detect Weld Mode

You can use Ground Detect Weld Mode to have ultrasonic energy turn off when the horn comes in contact with your electrically isolated fixture or anvil. It is necessary to install Branson cable EDP No. 100-246-630 from the MPS/GDS receptacle on the rear of the actuator to your isolated fixture/anvil in order to utilize this feature.

From within Ground Detect Mode, you can also select several other parameters, ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject Limits. The following two pages contain a map of the menu options in Ground Detect Mode. Procedures for setting primary parameters follow the map. For more information on setting the optional parameters within Ground Detect Mode, or any other welding mode, see 6.4 Setting Other Weld Parameters.

2000X Power Supply Main Menu: Weld Setup (Ground Detect Weld Mode)



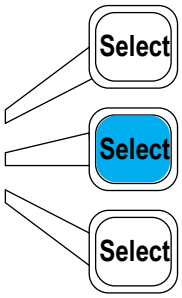
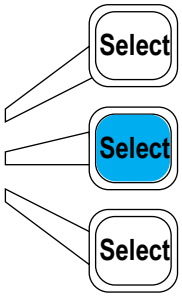

DIGITAL UPS
Pg1of1
Setup >
Weld Status =
SETUP
Pg1of2
Memory =
On
PRESET NAMES
PgXofX
__ __ __ __ __
All available preset names will be
PRETRIGGER
Pg1of1
Auto Pretrigger=
AFTERBURST
Pg1of1
AB Delay(s)=
CYCLE ABORTS Pg
1of1
CNTL LIMITS>
Off

Setting Scrub Time

You can select the amount of time you want to elapse between detection of a ground condition and the termination of ultrasonics.

NOTICE	
	Your must have Ground Detect Cable EDP No. 100-246-630 installed to utilize the ground detect feature. It connects from the MPS/GDS receptacle on the rear of the actuator to the electrically isolated fixture/anvil.

Table 6.10 Setting Scrub Time

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Scrub Time(s)**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of20 Weld Mode>Gnd Detect Scrub Time(s)=0.500 Hold Time(s)=30.000	
Use the numeric keypad to enter the **Scrub Time** (in seconds) that you want to use, or press the same **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between the minimum value (.001 second) and the maximum value (0.500 second) for **Scrub Time**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of20 Weld Mode>Gnd Detect Scrub Time(s)=0.100 Hold Time(s)=30.000	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.	WELD SETUP Pg1of20 Weld Mode>Gnd Detect Scrub Time(s)=0.100 Hold Time(s)=30.000	

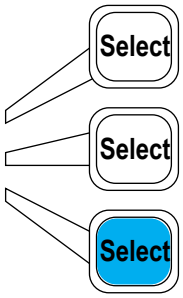
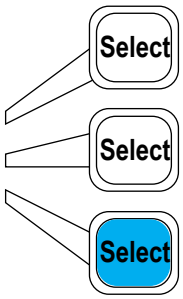
6.4 Setting Other Weld Parameters

From within each individual welding mode, you can also select several other parameters, including Amplitude (%), Pretrigger, Afterburst, Post Weld Seek, Frequency Offset, Control Limits, Cycle Aborts, and Suspect and Reject Limits. This section describes each of these parameters and the procedures for setting them.

Setting Hold Time

You can select the duration (in seconds) of the Hold step (the step during which there is no ultrasonic energy transmitted to your part, but pressure is maintained) in welding your parts, or select not to have a Hold Time.

Table 6.11 Setting Hold Time

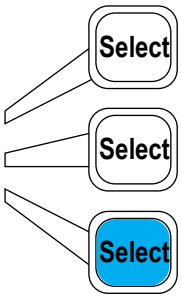
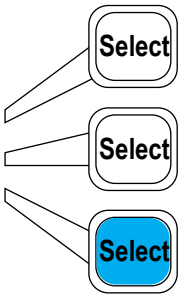
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Hold Time(s)**.	WELD SETUP Pg1of13 Weld Mode> Time Weld Time(s) = 1.500 Hold Time(s) = 0.100	
Use the numeric keypad to enter the **Hold Time** (in seconds) that you want to use, or press the same **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between the minimum value (0.010 second), and the maximum value (30.000 seconds) for **Hold Time or Off to disable the Hold Time.**	WELD SETUP Pg1of13 Weld Mode> Time Weld Time = 1.500 Hold Time(s)= 0.100	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.	WELD SETUP Pg1of13 Weld Mode> Time Weld Time(s)= 1.500 Hold Time(s) = 0.100	

Setting Amplitude (%)

You can set the amplitude of the ultrasonic energy that will be delivered in any welding mode. The Power Supply's default is to use 100% of the available amplitude. By changing the amplitude to some lesser percentage of the total available, or by setting the amplitude to begin at one level and finish at another, you can "fine tune" your overall welding procedure without making changes to your tooling (converter, booster, horn, or fixture).

You can select the amplitude to use when Amplitude is fixed. If Amplitude is Stepped, this parameter is inactive and the display shows **** for Amplitude (%). If you set Amplitude Control to External in System Configuration, this parameter is inactive and the display shows Ext for Amplitude (%).

Table 6.12 Setting Amplitude (%)

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Amplitude (%)**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Amplitude (%)**.	WELD SETUP Pg4of13 Trg Force (lb) = 10 Amplitude> FIXED Amplitude(%) =100	
Use the numeric keypad to enter the **Amplitude** (as a percentage of the maximum) that you want to use, or press the same **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between the minimum value (10%) and the maximum value (100%) for **Amplitude (%).**	WELD SETUP Pg4of13 Trg Force (lb) = 10 Amplitude> FIXED Amplitude(%) =60	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.	WELD SETUP Pg4of13 Trg Force Amplitude> FIXED Amplitude(%) =60	

Setting Stepped Amplitude

You can select whether you want to apply a fixed or stepped amplitude to the part during welding. If you choose to use a stepped amplitude, you must also choose the first and second amplitudes (each as a percentage of the maximum) to use before and after the step point, as well as the criteria to use to step.

Table 6.13 Setting Stepped Amplitude

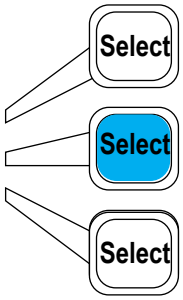
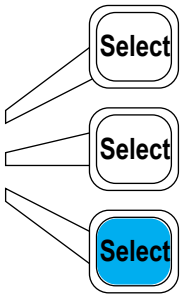
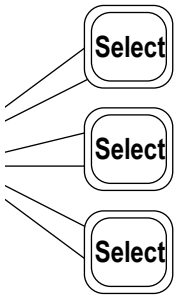
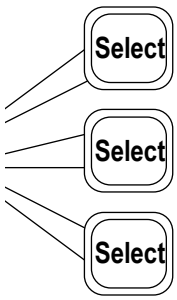
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Amplitude**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Amplitude**.	WELD SETUP Pg3of13 Hold Time(s)= 0.010 Amplitude> FIXED Amplitude(%)=	
Press the same **Select** key again to toggle between FIXED and STEP.	WELD SETUP Pg3of13 Hold Time (s)= 0.010 Amplitude> STEP Amplitude(%)=	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.		

Table 6.13 Setting Stepped Amplitude

Take this action	To get this result	Key
If you chose STEP, use the **Select** keys and the numeric keypad to enter the values you want to use as limits before and after the step (where A is before and B is after).	AMP STEP Pg1of4 Amplitude A(%) =100 Amplitude B(%) =100 Step @ T(s) =30.000	
Pressing the **Select** key that corresponds to one of the following limits, to select the criteria for stepping: T(s): time (in seconds) E (J): energy level (in Joules) Pwr(%): percentage of peak power Ext Sig: whether an external signal will be used to trigger the amplitude step (see note).	AMP STEP Pg4of4 Step @ E(J) = Off Step @ Pwr(%)= Off Step @ Ext Sig= Off	
Press the **Go Back/Esc** key to exit the submenu.		

NOTICE	
	You must go to User I/O and assign pin to Ext Signal.

Setting Pretrigger

You can select whether the ultrasonic energy will be started before the horn makes contact with the part. If you select **ON**, you can set the distance at which the pretrigger ultrasonics will be started, and the amplitude that will be used. Autopretrigger is the default. When Auto Pretrigger is used, ultrasonic energy will start when the horn leaves the home position [1/8 in. (3.175 mm) travel].

Table 6.14 Setting Pretrigger

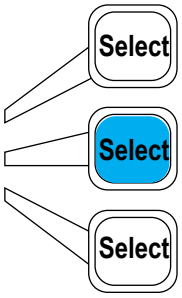
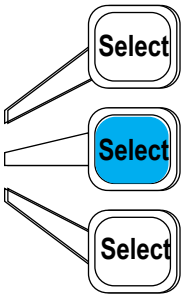
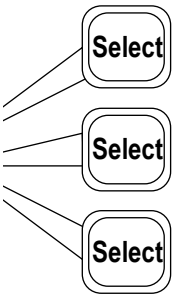
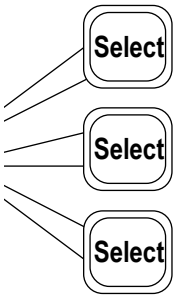
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Pretrigger**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Pretrigger**.	WELD SETUP Pg4of15 Amplitude(%) =100 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> Off	
Press the same **Select** key again to toggle between Off and On.	WELD SETUP Pg4of15 Amplitude(%) =100 Pretrigger> On Afterburst Off	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.		
If you chose Off, continue setting other parameters in the menu.	WELD SETUP Pg4of15 Amplitude(%) =100 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> Off	

Table 6.14 Setting Pretrigger

Take this action	To get this result	Key
If you chose On, use the **Select** keys and the numeric keypad to enter the values you want to use as Pretrigger limits. Use a **Select** key to choose one of the following ways to begin the pretrigger ultrasonics: Auto starts ultrasonics as the actuator leaves its home position [1/8 in (3.175 mm) minimum], and allows access to enter Pretrg Amp(%) values. Time allows you to select the percentage of maximum amplitude, and Pretrg@T(s) values that will be used for the pretrigger. Press the **Go Back/Esc** key to exit the submenu.	PRETRIGGER Pg1of1 Off =Off Auto =On Time =Off	

Setting the Afterburst

You can select whether there will be a burst of ultrasonic energy after welding is complete. If you select **ON**, you can also set the delay and length of the afterburst (in seconds), and the amplitude that will be used.

Table 6.15 Setting the Afterburst

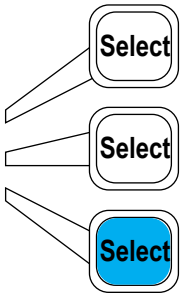
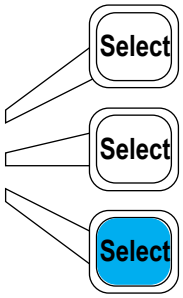
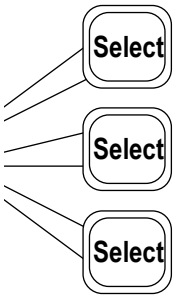
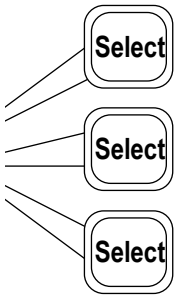
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Afterburst**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Afterburst**.	WELD SETUP Pg6of13 Amplitude(%)= 100 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> On	
Press the same **Select** key again to toggle between On and Off.	WELD SETUP Pg6of13 Amplitude(%) 100 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> On	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.		
If you chose Off, continue setting other parameters in the menu.	WELD SETUP Pg6of13 Amplitude(%) =100 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> Off	

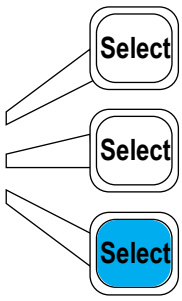
Table 6.15 Setting the Afterburst

Take this action	To get this result	Key
If you chose On, use the **Select** keys and the numeric keypad to enter the values you want to use as Afterburst parameters. Use **Select** keys and the numeric keypad to set the following criteria for the afterburst: AB Delay (s): Set the delay (in seconds) to wait after the end of the hold time until the start of the afterburst. Suggested minimum value is 0.1 second. AB Time (s): Set the Time (in seconds) of the afterburst. AB Amplitude(%): Set the amplitude (as a percentage of the maximum) to be used during the afterburst. Press the **Go Back/Esc** key to exit the submenu.	AFTERBURST Pg1of1 AB Delay(s) =0.010 AB Time(s) =0.010 AB Amplitude(%) =100	

Energy Brake

Use this menu to turn Energy Braking On or Off. When Energy Brake is turned on, Energy Braking state will be added to the weld sequence after Weld state and before Hold state. This gives the power supply some time to reduce the amplitude before the sonics are shut off. Any overloads that occur will be ignored during this state. They will be handled in the hold state. Weld cycle time will be increased by the time used by Energy Braking.

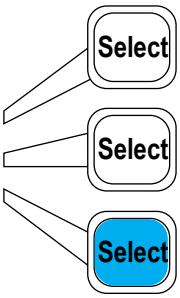
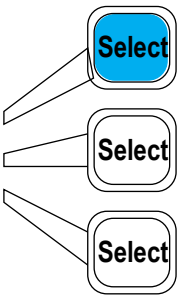
Table 6.16 Turning Energy Braking on or off

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Energy Brake**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Energy Brake**. You can toggle between On and Off. When turned On, you use the ± keys to set a time value between 0.010 and 1.000 second.	WELD SETUP Pg7of13 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> Off Energy Brake> On	

Digital UPS Setup

Use this menu to setup the DUPS and view available presets.

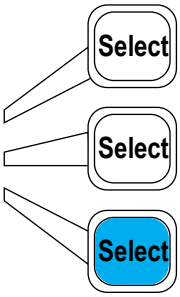
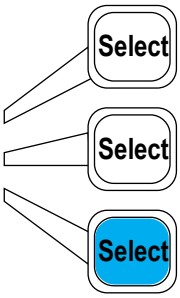
Table 6.17 Digital UPS setup

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Digital UPS**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Digital UPS**.	WELD SETUP Pg7of13 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> Off Digital UPS>	
This screen is displayed. Press the Select key that corresponds to Setup.	DIGITAL UPS Pg7of14 Setup> Weld Status = On Preset Names> Memory Reset = On	
The contents of the SETUP screen are displayed (scroll to view Timed Seek). You can toggle to turn Memory or Timed Seek On or Off. Ramp Time can be set from a minimum of .010 to maximum 1.0 seconds, default is .080. Seek Time can be set from a minimum of .100 to maximum 1.00 seconds, default is .500. Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.	SETUP Pg7of13 Memory = On Ramp Time(s) = 0.080 Seek Time(s) = 0.500 Timed Seek = Off	

Setting the Post Weld Seek

You can select Post Weld Seek. Post Weld Seek operates the stack at a low-level (5%) amplitude immediately after the weld cycle afterburst, so the Power Supply can determine the current operating frequency of the stack.

Table 6.18 Setting the Post Weld Seek

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Post Weld Seek**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Post Weld Seek**.	WELD SETUP Pg7of13 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> Off Post Weld Seek =Off	
Use the same **Select** key to toggle between Off and On.	WELD SETUP Pg7of13 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> Off Post Weld Seek =On	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.	WELD SETUP Pg7of13 Pretrigger> Off Afterburst> Off Post Weld Seek =On	

Setting the Frequency Offset

You can select whether to use a Frequency Offset. If you select **ON**, you must also set the offset (in Hz), which the 2000X will apply to the frequency value at the trigger point stored in the Power Supply.

NOTICE	
	**Do not** use this feature unless you are advised to do so by Branson.

Table 6.19 Setting the Frequency Offset

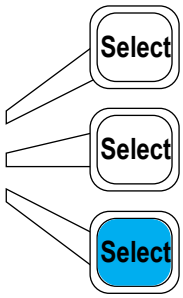
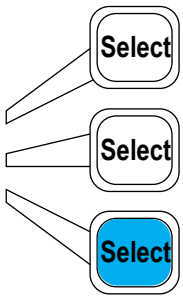
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Frequency Offset**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Frequency Offset**.	WELD SETUP Pg8of13 Afterburst> Off Post Weld Seek =On Frequency Offset>On	
Press the same **Select** key again to toggle between On and Off.	WELD SETUP Pg8of13 Afterburst> Off Post Weld Seek =On Frequency Offset> On	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.		

Table 6.19 Setting the Frequency Offset

Take this action	To get this result	Key
If you chose Off, continue setting other parameters in the menu.	WELD SETUP Pg8of13 Afterburst> Off Post Weld Seek =On Frequency Offset>Off	Select Select Select
If you chose On, press **Enter**. Use the numeric keypad to enter the frequency offset (Freq Offset) value. or press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between the minimum value and the maximum value for Freq Offset. Selecting **Change Sign** changes the Freq Offset value from positive to negative. Range of values is ± 400Hz	FREQ OFFSET Pg1of1 FreqOffset(Hz) =+200 Change Sign (-,+)	Select Select Select Go Back/ Esc

Setting Cycle Aborts

You can select whether to abort any cycle based on certain input conditions. If you select **ON**, you can set the Ground Detect Cutoff to **ON** or **OFF** (to indicate whether to abort the cycle if the horn contacts the electrically isolated fixture or anvil). Any cycle-abort conditions will generate an alarm and terminate the cycle.

NOTICE	
	You must have Ground Detect Cable EDP 100-246-630 installed to utilize Ground Detect Cutoff. It connects at the MPS/GDS located on the rear of the actuator to the isolated fixture/anvil.

Table 6.20 Setting Cycle Aborts

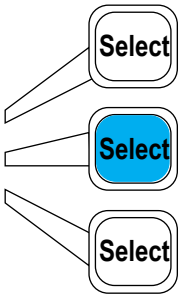
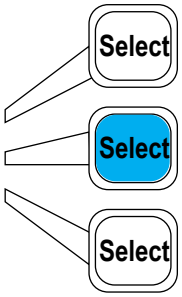
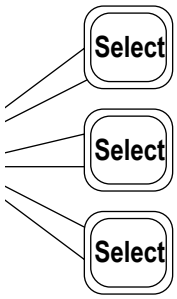
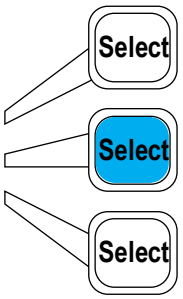
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Cycle Aborts**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Cycle Aborts**.	WELD SETUP Pg10of13 Frequency Offset>On Cycle Aborts> On Control Limits> Off	
Press the same **Select** key again to toggle between On and Off.	WELD SETUP Pg10of13 Frequency Offset>On Cycle Aborts> On Control Limits> Off	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.		
If you chose Off, continue setting other parameters in the menu.	WELD SETUP Pg10of13 Frequency Offset>On Cycle Aborts> Off Control Limits> Off	

Table 6.20 Setting Cycle Aborts

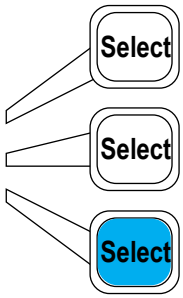
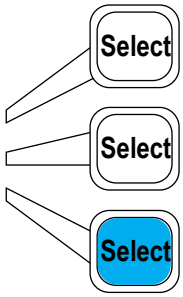
Take this action	To get this result	Key
If you chose On, use the **Select** keys to set the Ground Detect to On or Off. Press the **Go Back/Esc** key to exit the submenu.	CYCLE ABORTS Pg1of1 Gnd Det Abort = On	 

Setting the Timeout

You select the duration (in seconds) of the maximum allowable time for the primary parameter to be reached during the weld in modes other than time. If the primary parameter has not been reached, the ultrasonic energy will be turned off and the Hold Time will start at the set timeout value.

NOTICE	
	This feature is not available when in time mode.

Table 6.21 Setting the Timeout

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Timeout**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Timeout**.	WELD SETUP Pg11of14 Frequency Offset>Off Cycle Aborts> Off Timeout(s)= 6.000	
Use the numeric keypad to enter the timeout, in second(s) that you want to use, or press the same select key again to toggle between the minimum value, 0.050 second(s) and the maximum value, 30.000 second(s) for Timeout.	WELD SETUP Pg11of14 Frequency Offset>Off Cycle Aborts> Off Timeout(s)= 6.000	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.		

Setting the Control Limits

You can select whether to use Control Limits. If you select **ON**, you will set limits of minimum and maximum energy compensation (in Joules), a peak power cutoff (as a percentage of the maximum), an absolute distance (in) measured from the home position, or a collapse distance (in) measured from the trigger. The 2000X uses these Control Limits in addition to the primary weld mode and parameter to determine the end of the welding cycle before moving to the Hold state.

When energy compensation is on and the minimum energy computed value is not reached, the weld time will be extended up to 50% of the Set Weld time value in order to

reach this limit. When the maximum energy computed value is reached, the Weld Time will be terminated and the Hold Time will start.

Table 6.22 Setting the Control Limits

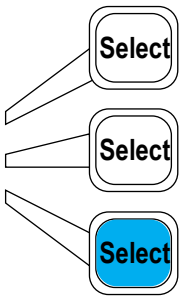
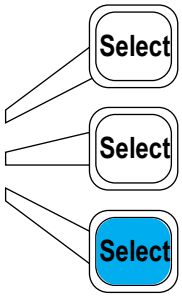
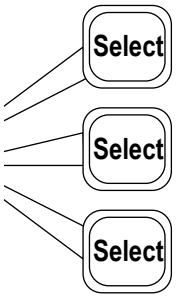
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Control Limits**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Control Limits**.	WELD SETUP Pg11of13 Frequency Offset>Off Cycle Aborts> Off Control Limits> Off	
Press the same **Select** key again to toggle between On and Off to turn the **Control Limits** Off.	WELD SETUP Pg11of13 Frequency Offset>Off Cycle Aborts> Off Control Limits> Off	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.		
If you chose Off, continue setting other parameters in the menu.	WELD SETUP Pg11of13 Frequency Offset>Off Cycle Aborts> Off Control Limits> Off	

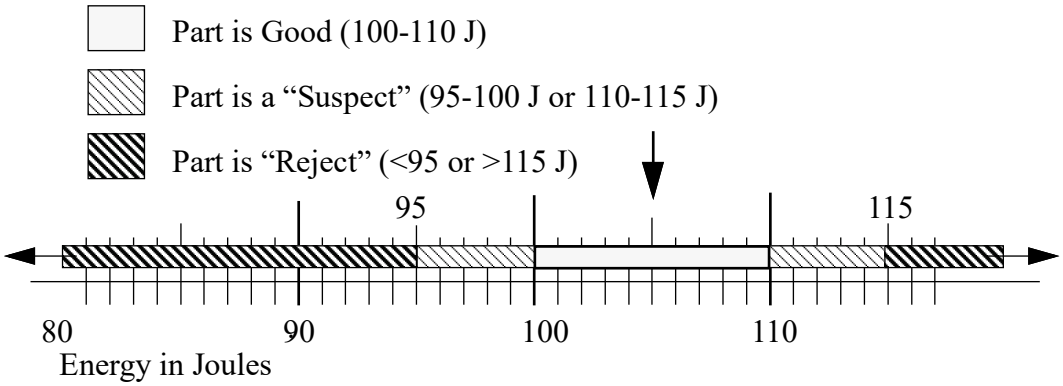
Table 6.22 Setting the Control Limits

Take this action	To get this result	Key
If you chose On, use the **Select** keys and the numeric keypad to enter the values you want to use as Control Limits. Use the **Select** keys and the numeric keypad to set the following limits to end the weld portion of the cycle: Pk Pwr Cutoff (%): set the peak power cutoff as a percentage of the maximum peak power. Press the **Go Back/Esc** key to exit the submenu.	CNTL LIMITS Pg1of2 Pk Pwr Cut(%) =100	Select Select Select

Setting Limits

From within any weld mode, you can set the main parameter (indicated by the name of the weld mode) and Hold Time and several other parameters. The other parameters you can set include Suspect Limits and Reject Limits. You can reduce the amount of scrap from unacceptable parts by identifying those parts that are slightly out of range using Suspect and/or Reject Limits. Upon manual inspection, you might find that these parts are acceptable. You can set the Suspect and Reject Limits on the Power Supply to identify (by counter, printed output, or alarm) all parts that fall into limit categories.

For example, consider a weld cycle in Time Weld Mode where you have set the time to 0.280 second. You have determined (by laboratory testing, trial and error, or some other means) that you get an acceptable weld when 100 to 110 Joules of energy have been transmitted to the part. These are the limits that you should then set on the Power Supply as Suspect Limits. You have also determined that the part is a "reject" if it received fewer than 95 Joules or more than 115 Joules. This is illustrated in the following bar graph:



You can set Suspect and Reject Limits for meaningful parameters in each weld mode.

Setting the Suspect Limits

You can select whether to use Suspect Limits to indicate that a part might not have a good weld. If you select **ON**, you can set limits of minimum and maximum time allowed for the weld, energy levels (in Joules), peak power levels (as a percentage of the maximum), and/or frequency (in Hz). If you set Reset Required to **YES**, when an alarm is generated, you will need to press the **Reset** key prior to welding another part.

Table 6.23 Setting the Suspect Limits

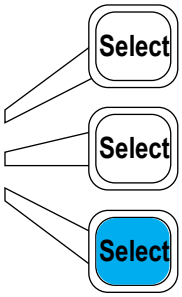
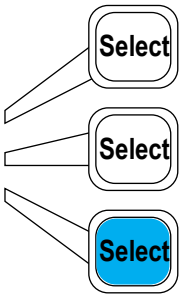
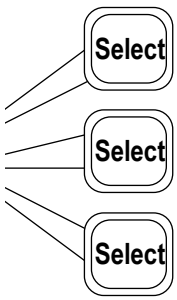
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Suspect Limits**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Suspect Limits**.	WELD SETUP Pg12of13 Cycle Aborts> Off Control Limits> Off Suspect Limits> On	
Press the same **Select** key again to toggle between On and Off.	WELD SETUP Pg12of13 Cycle Aborts> Off Control Limits> Off Suspect Limits> On	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.		
If you chose Off, continue setting other parameters in the menu.	WELD SETUP Pg12of14 Cycle Aborts> Off Control Limits> Off Suspect Limits > Off	

Table 6.23 Setting the Suspect Limits

If you chose On, use the **Select** keys and set **Reset Required** to Yes or No.

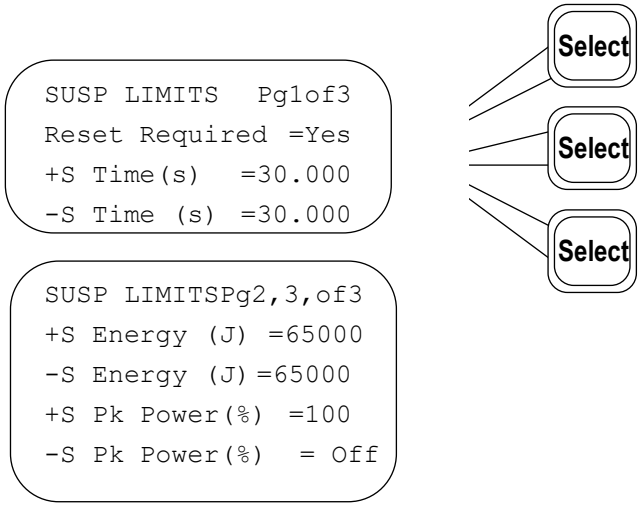
Use the **Select** keys to set the suspect limits for each of the following categories either with a numeric value or to Off:

-/+Time(s): time (in seconds) above and below the value you chose

-/+Energy(J): energy levels (in Joules) above and below the value you chose to be an acceptable weld.

-/+Pk Power(%): percentages of peak power above and below the value you chose to be an acceptable weld.

Press the **Go Back/Esc** key to exit the submenu.



Setting the Reject Limits

You can select whether to use Reject Limits to indicate that a part does not have a good weld. You can set limits of minimum and maximum time for the weld (in seconds), energy levels (in Joules), peak power levels (as a percentage of the maximum), and/or frequency (in Hz). If you set Reset Required to **YES**, when an alarm is generated, you will need to press the **Reset** key prior to welding another part.

Table 6.24 Setting the Reject Limits

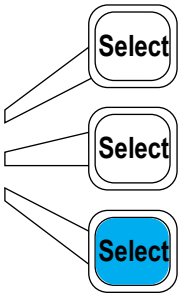
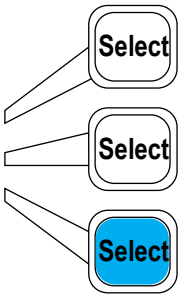
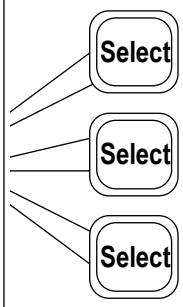
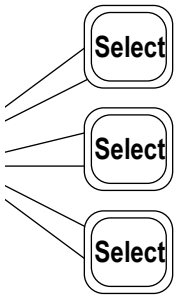
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Reject Limits**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Reject Limits**.	WELD SETUP Pg14of15 Control Limits> Off Suspect Limits> Off Reject Limits> Off	
Press the same **Select** key again to toggle between On and Off.	WELD SETUP Pg14of15 Control Limits> Off Suspect Limits> Off Reject Limits > Off	
Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press **Go Back/Esc** to make no change to the value.		
If you chose Off, continue setting other parameters in the menu.	WELD SETUP Pg14of15 Control Limits> Off Suspect Limits> Off Reject Limits > Off	

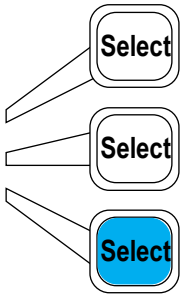
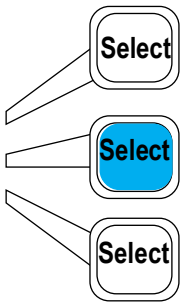
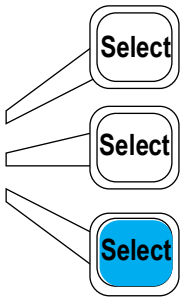
Table 6.24 Setting the Reject Limits

Take this action	To get this result	Key
If you chose On, use the **Select** keys and set **Reset Required** to Yes or No. Use the **Select** keys to set the suspect limits for each of the following categories either with a numeric value or to Off: -/+Time (s): times (in seconds) above and below the value you chose -/+Energy(J): energy levels (in Joules) above and below the value you chose to be an acceptable or suspect weld -/+Pk Power(%): percentages of peak power above and below the value you chose to be an acceptable or suspect weld	REJ LIMITS Pg1of4 Reset Required =Yes +R Time (s) =30.000 -R Time (s) =30.000 REJ LIMITS Pg2of4 +R Time (s) =30.000 -R Time (s) =30.000 +R Energy(J) =65000 REJ LIMITS Pg3and4of4 +R Energy (J) =Off -R Energy (J) =Off +R Pk Pwr =Off -R Pk Pwr =Off	
Press the **Go Back/Esc** key to exit the submenu.		

Write In Fields

Write In Fields allow the assignment of a unique alphanumeric of up to 10 characters to a specific weld setup and cycle that can be viewed on a Host Computer or Printout.

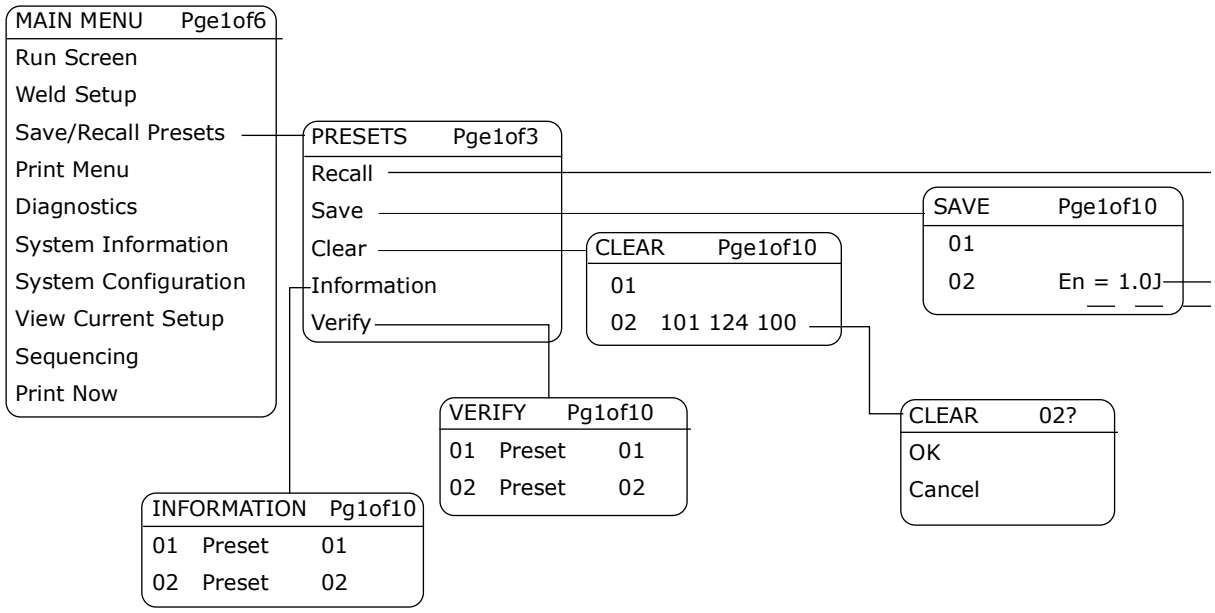
Table 6.25 Write in Fields

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Write In Fields**. Press the **Select key** that corresponds to **Write In Fields**. The following screen will appear.	WELD SETUP Pg13of13 Suspect Limits> Off Reject Limits> Off Write In Fields>	
Press a **Select** key to correspond to **Text1 or Text2**. The following screen will appear.	WRITE IN FIELD Pg1of1 Text1 Text2	
Use the right arrow to move to and select up to 10 alphanumerics by pressing **Enter** for each text entry. Select **Done** when finished. This output shows up on the Host Computer and Printout only.	WRITE IN 2 Pg1of1 BCDEFGHIJKLM./01234 NOPQRSTUVWXYZ# 56789 Text: Done	

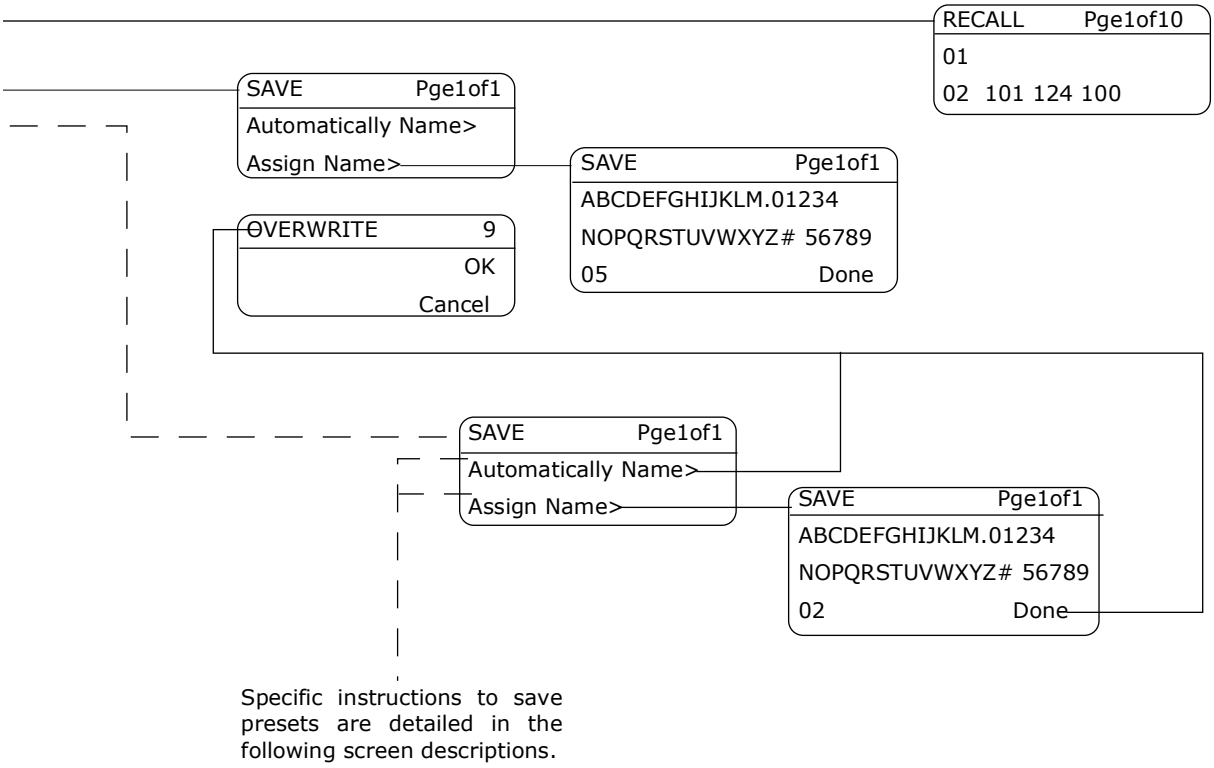
6.5 Saving and Recalling Presets

You can set up the 2000X Power Supply to weld a particular application and then save the settings to a preset. You can do this for up to twelve presets.

If, for instance, you have verified through trial and error or some other means that a particular combination of Power Supply settings yields acceptable parts for each of several different configurations or materials, you might want to save that combination of settings as a preset to streamline the change from production of one part to another. Always set the Power Supply to the combination of parameter settings that you want to save before entering the Presets menu. The following two pages contain a map of the menu items available on the Presets menu.



2000X energy Power Supply Main Menu: Save/Recall Presets



Saving a Preset

After you have set up the Power Supply to run a weld in a particular way, you can choose to save that combination of settings as a Preset. You will be able to name the Preset to make it easy to recall at a later time.

Table 6.26 Saving a Preset

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Main Menu** key.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	Main Menu
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Save/Recall Presets**.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	Select Select Select
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Save Preset**.	PRESETS Pg1of1 Recall Preset Save Preset Clear Preset	Select Select Select

Table 6.26 Saving a Preset

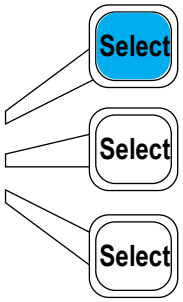
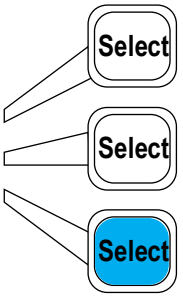
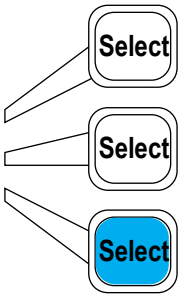
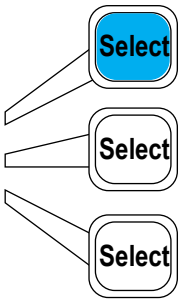
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to the number of the preset that you want to set.	SAVE Pg1of8 01 02 03	
The Power Supply can name the preset, or you can assign a name.	SAVE Pg1of1 Automatically Name> Assign ID Name> Preset 1>	
To allow the Power Supply to name the preset, after pressing the **Select** key that corresponds to **Automatically Name**, you will see the name for the preset appear in the Save Preset list. The convention for naming presets is as follows: Time: Tm = xxxxS Energy: En = xxxxJ Peak Power: PP = xxx% Absolute: Ab = xxx IN Collapse: Cl = xxx IN Ground Detect: GD = xxxS Power Supply will assign same name to all according to mode.	SAVE Pg2of10 01 En=1.0J 02 Tm=0.010 03>	

Table 6.26 Saving a Preset

Take this action	To get this result	Key
To assign a name to a preset, after pressing the **Select** key that corresponds to **Assign ID Name**, you will see a submenu where you will assign a name to the preset. To do this, use the arrow keys to scroll to each letter or number you want to select and press **Enter** on the numeric keypad after each character. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Done** when you have entered the name you want to use. If you are using a Host Computer, you are limited to only these characters.	SAVE ABCDEFGHIJKLM./01234 NOPQRSTUVWXYZ #56789 01 Done	
If there is a preset currently in a particular position, you can overwrite the current preset by pressing the **Select** key that corresponds to **OK**, or choose not to overwrite the current preset by pressing the **Select** key that corresponds to **Cancel**.	OVERWRITE PRESET? 1 OK> Cancel>	

Recalling a Preset

You can recall a Preset that you had set and named at a previous time to make it easy to begin processing a different type of part.

Table 6.27 Recalling a Preset

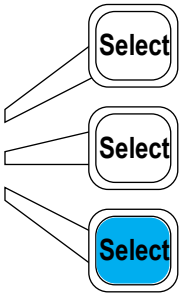
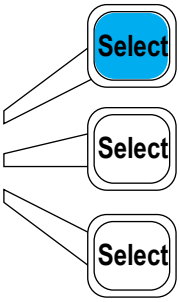
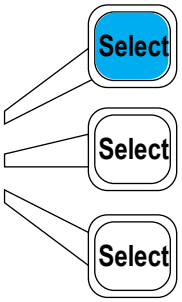
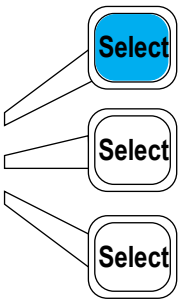
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Main Menu** key.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Save/Recall Presets**.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Recall Preset**.	PRESETS Pg1of1 Recall Preset Save Preset Clear Preset	

Table 6.27 Recalling a Preset

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to the preset that you want to use.	RECALL Pg1of8 01 TM=30.000s 02 E=15000J 03 PP=85%	
The Power Supply will recall all of the parameters you have set to correspond to that preset and return you to the **Run Screen**. Here you can verify that the correct preset has been recalled Press the select key that corresponds to the alarm message.	READY: TM = 30.000s **ALARM** Adjust Weld> Weld Results>	

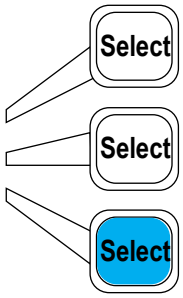
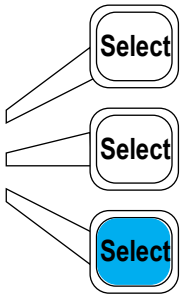
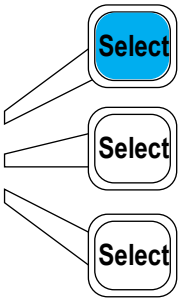
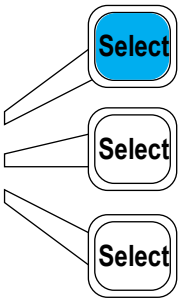
Clearing a Preset

You can clear a Preset from the memory of your Power Supply. You might want to do this if you have changed the parameters for a given part and have saved them as a new Preset, or if you will no longer be processing a particular type of part.

Table 6.28 Clearing a Preset

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Main Menu** key.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	

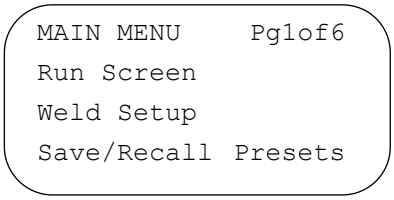
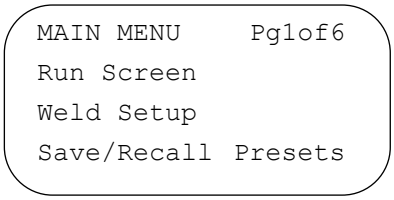
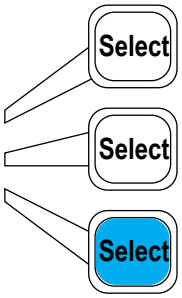
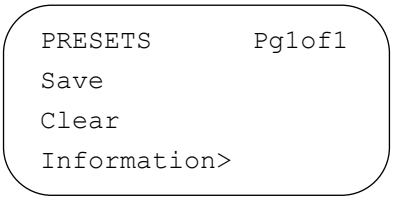
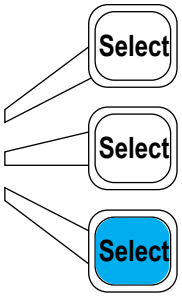
Table 6.28 Clearing a Preset

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Save/Recall Presets**.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Clear Preset**.	PRESETS Pg1of1 Recall Save Clear	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to the number preset that you want to clear.	CLEAR Pg1of8 01 TM=30.000s 02 E=15000J 03 PP=85%	
To delete the preset, press the **Select** key that corresponds to **OK**, or choose not to delete the preset by pressing the **Select** key that corresponds to **Cancel or select the Go Back key.**	CLEAR 01? OK> Cancel>	

Preset Information

The Information submenu provides the date and time the preset was last saved. It also shows whether the preset has been verified or not, the preset name and the number of cycles run so far.

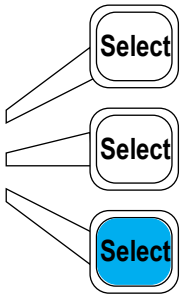
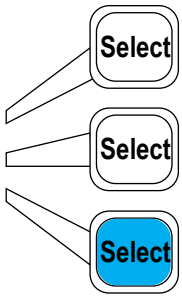
Table 6.29 Preset Information

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Main Menu** key.		
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Save/Recall Presets**.		
Scroll and Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Information**. The screen will then show the 2 presets. Selecting the preset of interest will bring up a screen detailing the information listed at the top of the page.		

Verify Presets

The Verify Preset menu allows preset to be verified instantly without waiting for the next weld cycle. To verify a preset, you first select the preset of interest. After selecting the preset, a pop-up window will display a message for about 2 seconds, declaring whether it is verified or not.

Table 6.30 Verify Presets

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Main Menu** key.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Save/Recall Presets**.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	
Scroll and Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Verify**. The screen will then show the 2 presets. Selecting the preset of interest will bring up a message indicating whether the preset is verified or not.	PRESETS Pg1of1 Clear Information> Verify>	

6.6 Printing

You can print information about the current welder setup, the most recent weld that you performed, or the last 50 welds that you performed, as well as graphs of the power, amplitude, frequency of the most recent weld, plotted against the time of the weld cycle (in seconds).

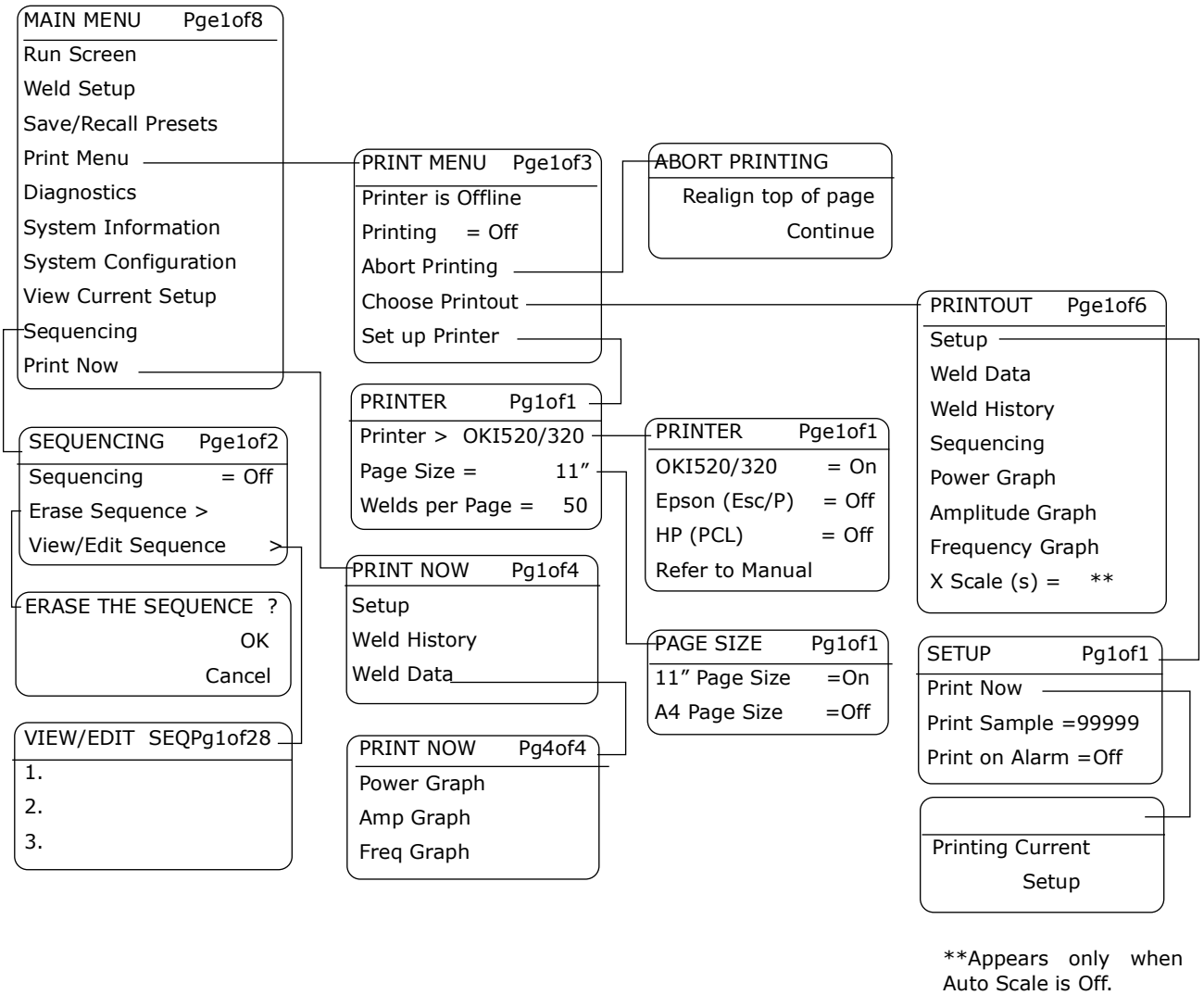
You can print on demand, sample and alarm, and mix any mode/trigger that is necessary to evaluate weld results.

Settings for scale must be set for printing anything other than time mode (which is autoscaling).

You can gain access to the **Print** menu from any point in the menus by using the **Print** key, or from the **Main** menu by selecting **Print Menu**. The following two pages contain a map of the menu options available on the Print Menu. Procedures for printing follow the map.

Refer to Table 4.5 Printer Compatibility for a list of settings for that printer (this is not required if the printer was purchased through Branson). For all other approved printers, consult the owners manual. For a list of approved printers, refer to Table 4.5 Printer Compatibility.

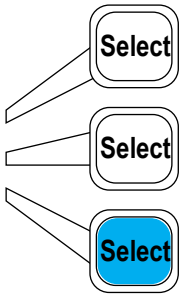
2000X Power Supply Main Menu: Print Menu



**Appears only when Auto Scale is Off.

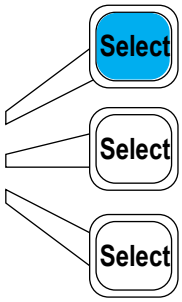
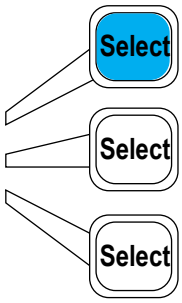
Accessing the Print Menu

Table 6.31 Accessing the Print Menu

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Print** key while you are viewing any menu.	PRINT MENU Pg1of3 Printer is Online Printing = Off Abort Printing	
OR		
Press the **Main Menu** button from any menu.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	
Use the down arrow key to scroll through the **Main Menu** until you see **Print Menu**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Print Menu**.	MAIN MENU Pg2of6 Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets Print Menu	

Turning Printing On or Off

Table 6.32 Turning Printing On or Off

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Printing** on the **Print** menu.	PRINT MENU Pg1of3 Printer is Online Printing = Off Abort Printing	
Press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between On and Off. If you set this parameter to Off, it will override **Print Sample and/or Print on Alarm**, which you can set from the **PRINTOUT>Setup Menu.** Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Printing** to the selection you want.	PRINT MENU Pg1of3 Printer is Online Printing = On Abort Printing	

Aborting Printing

Table 6.33 Aborting Printing

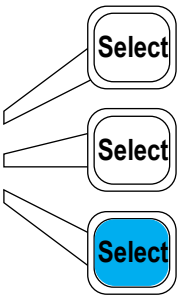
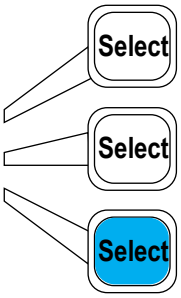
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Abort Printing** on the **Print** menu. **Note:** All printers excepting the Branson supplied Okidata 520 may not stop printing when Abort is selected from the menu.	PRINT MENU Pg1of3 Printer is Online Printing = On Abort Printing	

Table 6.33 Aborting Printing

Take this action	To get this result	Key
After two seconds you will see a message to realign the top of page. After resetting the top of the paper on the printer, press the **Select** key corresponding to the line that displays **Continue**.	Abort Printing Realign top of page Continue	
You now return to the **Print** menu.		

Printing an Item

Table 6.34 Printing an Item

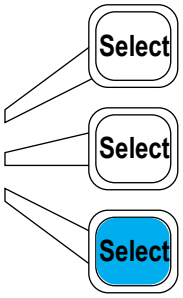
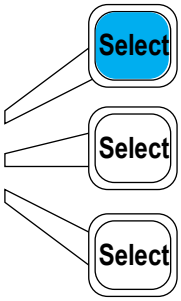
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Use the down arrow key to scroll through the **PRINT** menu until you see **Choose Printout**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Choose Printout** on the **Print** menu.	PRINT MENU Pg2of3 Printer is Online Abort Printing Choose Printout>	
You will see a submenu from which you can select print items. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to any or all of the items you want to print, for example, **Setup**, **Power graph**, **Amplitude and Frequency.**	PRINTOUT Pg1of9 Setup> Weld Data> Weld History>	

Table 6.34 Printing an Item

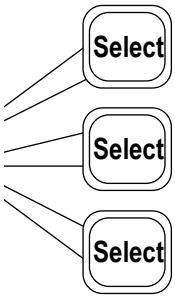
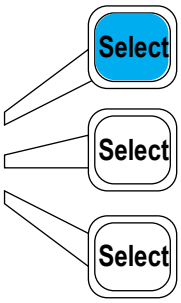
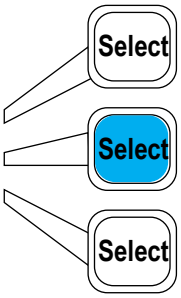
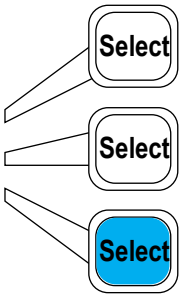
Take this action	To get this result	Key
You will see a submenu of printing choices.	SETUP Pg1of1 Print Now Print Sample =Off Print on Alarm =Off	
Select one of the choices according to the following: If you want to print information, for example your current setup, immediately, press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Print Now**.	SETUP Pg1of1 Print Now Print Sample =Off Print on Alarm =Off	
You will see a message on your display confirming that your selection is being printed.	Printing Current Setup	
If you want to print information, for example your current setup, after a particular number of sample pieces have been welded, press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Print On Sample**, and use the numeric keypad to enter the number of samples required to trigger printing. The range of values is 1 to 99999.	SETUP Pg1of1 Print Now Print Sample =1 Print on Alarm =Off	

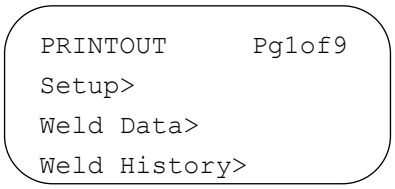
Table 6.34 Printing an Item

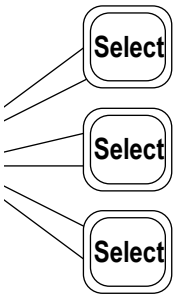
Take this action	To get this result	Key
If you want to print information, for example your current setup, any time there is an alarm, press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Print On Alarm**.	SETUP Pg1of1 Print Now Print on Sample=Off Print on Alarm =On	

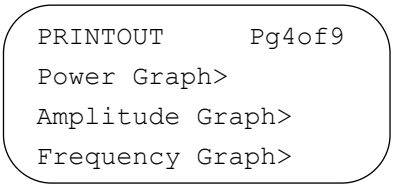
The items you can print from the Select Print Item submenu are summarized below:

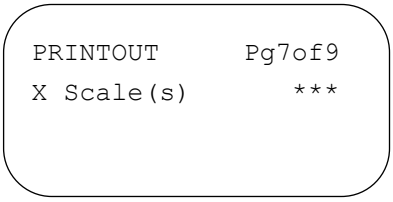
Table 6.35 Printable items from the Select Print Item submenu

- Select **Setup** to print your current weld setup
- Select **Weld Data** to print a summary of information about the most recent weld
- Select **Weld History** to print information for up to the previous 50 welds
- Select **Power Graph** to print a graph of the percentage of Peak Power that was used over time (in seconds) in the most recent weld
- Select **Amp Graph** to print a graph of the percentage of maximum amplitude over time (in seconds) in the most recent weld
- Select **Freq Graph** to print a graph of the horn frequency (in kHz) over time (in seconds) in the most recent weld
- Select **X Scale(s)** to set the value for the time in seconds to which you want to scale if Auto Scale is Off
  Note: Displayed only when Auto Scale is Off









Setting Up Your Printer

Table 6.36 Setting up your Printer

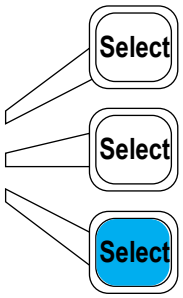
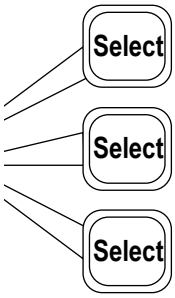
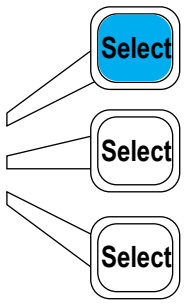
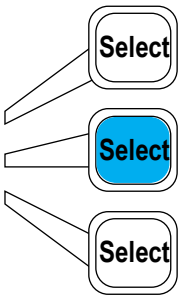
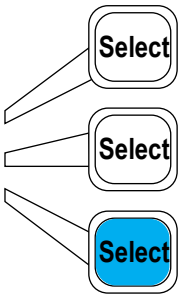
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Setup Printer** on the **Print** menu.	PRINT MENU Pg3of3 Abort Printing Choose Printout> Setup Printer>	
You will see a submenu from which you can select and set up your printer.	PRINTER Pg1of1 Printer> OKI520/320 Page Size> 11” Welds per Page =50	
Take one of the following steps:		
To select a printer model: Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Printer**. You will see the **PRINTER** submenu. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to the printer you want to use. Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad after you have made your selection.	PRINTER Pg1of1 Printer> OKI520/320 Page Size> 11” Welds per Page =50 PRINTER Pg1 and 2 of2 OKI520/320 =On Epson(Esc/P) =Off HP(PCL) =Off	

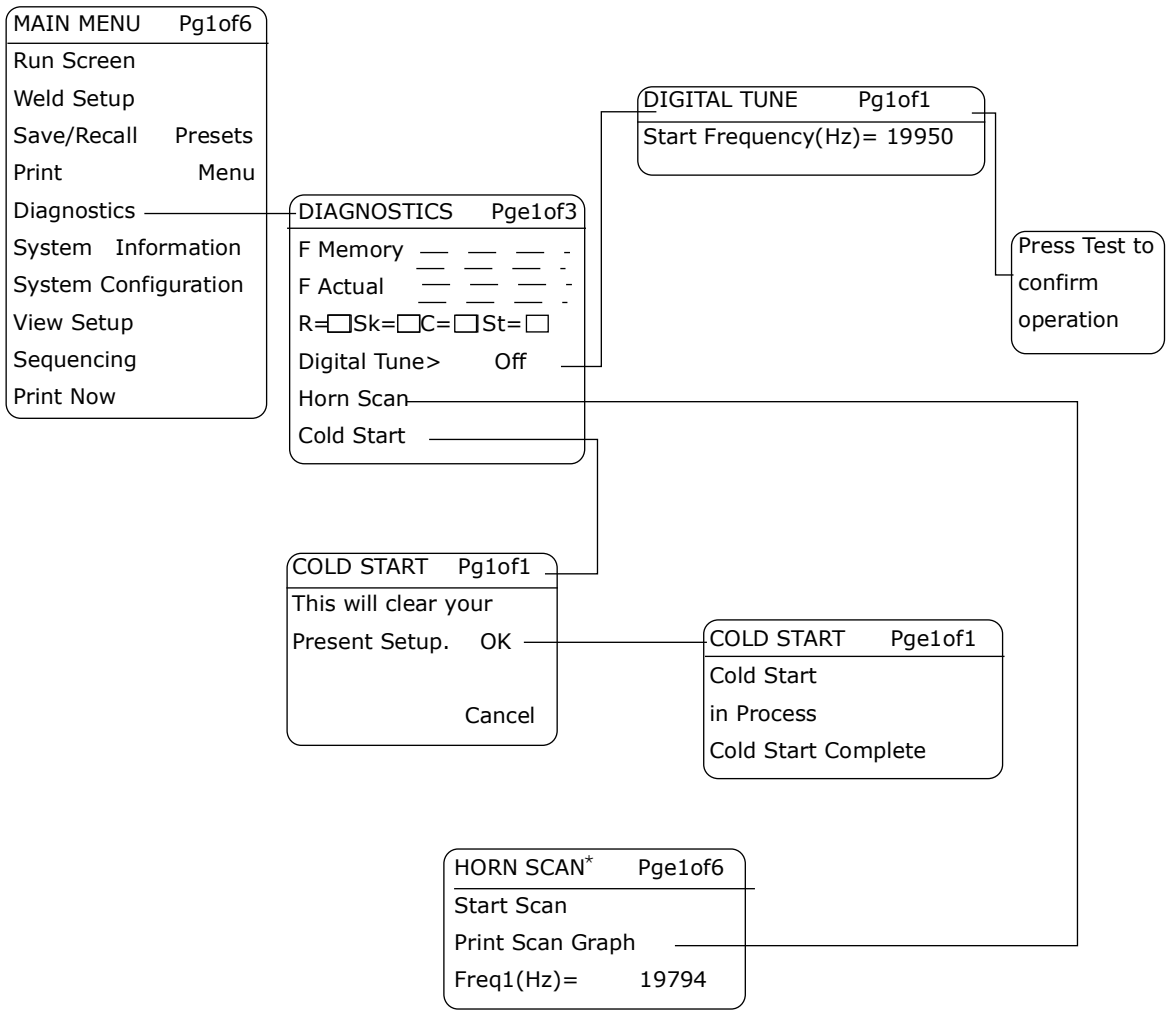
Table 6.36 Setting up your Printer

Take this action	To get this result	Key
To select a page length: Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Page Size**. You will see the **Page Size** submenu. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to the page length you want to use. Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad after you have made your selection.	PRINTER Pg1of1 Printer> OKI520/320 Page Size> 11” Welds per Page =50 PAGE SIZE Pg1of1 11” Page Size = On A4 Page Size = Off	
To set the number of lines per page: Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Welds per Page**. Use the numeric keypad to set the number of welds on a page. Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad after you have entered a value.	PRINTER Pg1of1 Printer> OKI520/320 Page size> 11” Welds per Page =50	

6.7 Using the Diagnostics Menu

You can use the **Diagnostics Menu** to perform a cold start, set the start frequency of your stack, and diagnose your system. The following page contains a map of the menu options available to you on the Diagnostics Menu. For more information on performing a cold start, see 7.6.3 Cold Start Procedures. For more information on setting up and testing your system, see 4.11 Testing the Installation.

2000X ea Power Supply Main Menu: Diagnostics Menu



Note: The menu items separated by dotted lines in the menu map appear in series on the Power Supply display.

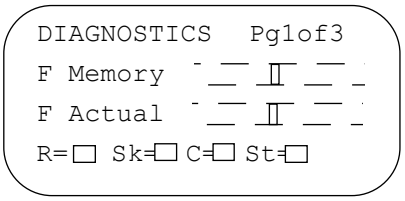
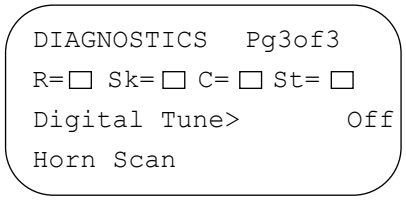
Viewing Diagnostics

Using the Diagnostics menu, you can view information about the power supply module, change the output frequency of the power supply, and set parameters back to factory default values.

Table 6.37 Viewing Diagnostics

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Main Menu** key.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Preset	Main Menu
Scroll downward through the **Main Menu** until you see **Diagnostics**. Press the Select Key that corresponds to **Diagnostics**.	MAIN MENU Pg3of6 Save/Recall Preset Print Menu Diagnostics	Select Select Select

Table 6.37 Viewing Diagnostics

Take this action	To get this result	Key
You can scroll through the Diagnostics menu using the arrow keys. These displays are viewable during a weld cycle. **F Memory**: This bar graph represents the stored frequency at the end of the last cycle. This is the frequency the power supply will start at for the next cycle **F Actual**: This bar graph represents the running (natural)frequency of the stack in real time **R (Run)**: Indicates that ultrasonic energy is on **Sk (Seek)**: Indicates the power supply is running at 5% amplitude for the purpose of finding the resonant frequency of the stack **C (Clear)**: Indicates there was an overload in Run or Test Mode and memory was cleared **St (Store)**: Indicates the running frequency of the system is stored into memory at the end of a cycle or at the end of a seek	 	

Setting Digital Tune

You can select whether to use Digital Tune to change the frequency at which your stack will start. If you select On, you must also set the Frequency (in Hz) at which the 2000X will start ultrasonics.

NOTICE	
	Do not use this feature unless advised to do so by Branson. It is not required for most applications.

Table 6.38 Setting Digital Tune

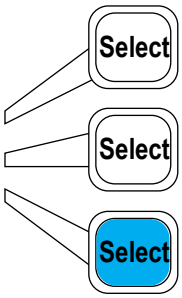
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Diagnostics**. Press the Select key that corresponds to Diagnostics.	MAIN MENU Pg3of6 Save/Recall Presets Print Menu Diagnostics	
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Digital Tune**. Press the Select key that corresponds to Digital Tune.	DIAGNOSTICS Pg1of3 F Actual R= Sk= C= St= Digital Tune> On	

Table 6.38 Setting Digital Tune

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the same Select key again to toggle between On and off.	DIAGNOSTICS Pg1of3 F Actual R=? Sk=? C=? St=? Digital Tune> On	Select Select Select
Press Enter on the numeric keypad to save the new value, or press Go Back/Esc to make no change to the value.		
Use the numeric keypad to enter the frequency (in Hz) that you want to use then press Enter on the numeric keypad to save the new value.	DIGITAL TUNE Pg1of1 Start Freq (Hz) =19950	Enter
Press a menu key or go back to exit the Digital Tune screen. The Display will show "Please wait." After four seconds, the display changes to Press Test to Confirm Operation.	Press Test To Confirm Operation	
Press the Test Key to store the new value.		Test

Performing a Horn Scan

You can perform a Horn Scan to enhance selection of operating frequency and control parameters. This feature is available in the DUPS only.

Table 6.39 Performing a Horn Scan

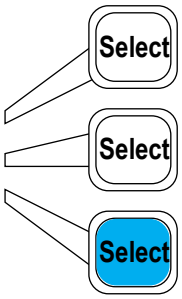
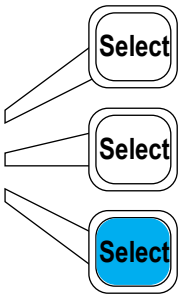
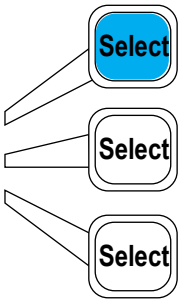
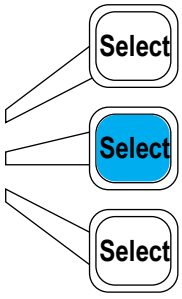
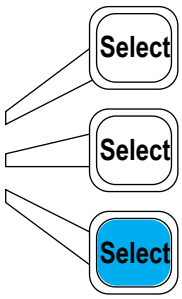
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Diagnostics**. Press the Select key that corresponds to Diagnostics.	MAIN MENU Pg3of6 Save/Recall Presets Print Menu Diagnostics	
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu until you see **Horn Scan**. Press the Select key that corresponds to Horn Scan.	DIAGNOSTICS Pg1of3 R=? Sk=? C=? St=? Digital Tune> On Horn Scan	
You will view the **Horn Scan** submenu. Press the Select Key that corresponds to **Start Scan**. A scan of horn reactance will be generated showing resonant frequencies at the zero crossover from capacitive to inductive reactance. Ideally there will be only one resonant frequency.	HORN SCAN Pg1of6 Start Scan Print Scan Graph Freq1(Hz)=	
If you are connected to a printer, use the arrow keys to scroll downward to **Print Scan Graph**. Press the Select key that corresponds to **Print Scan Graph**. Up to six resonant frequencies within a window of +/- 2 1/2 % of the center frequency will be displayed as they cross zero.	HORN SCAN Pg1of6 Start Scan Print Scan Graph Freq1(Hz)=	

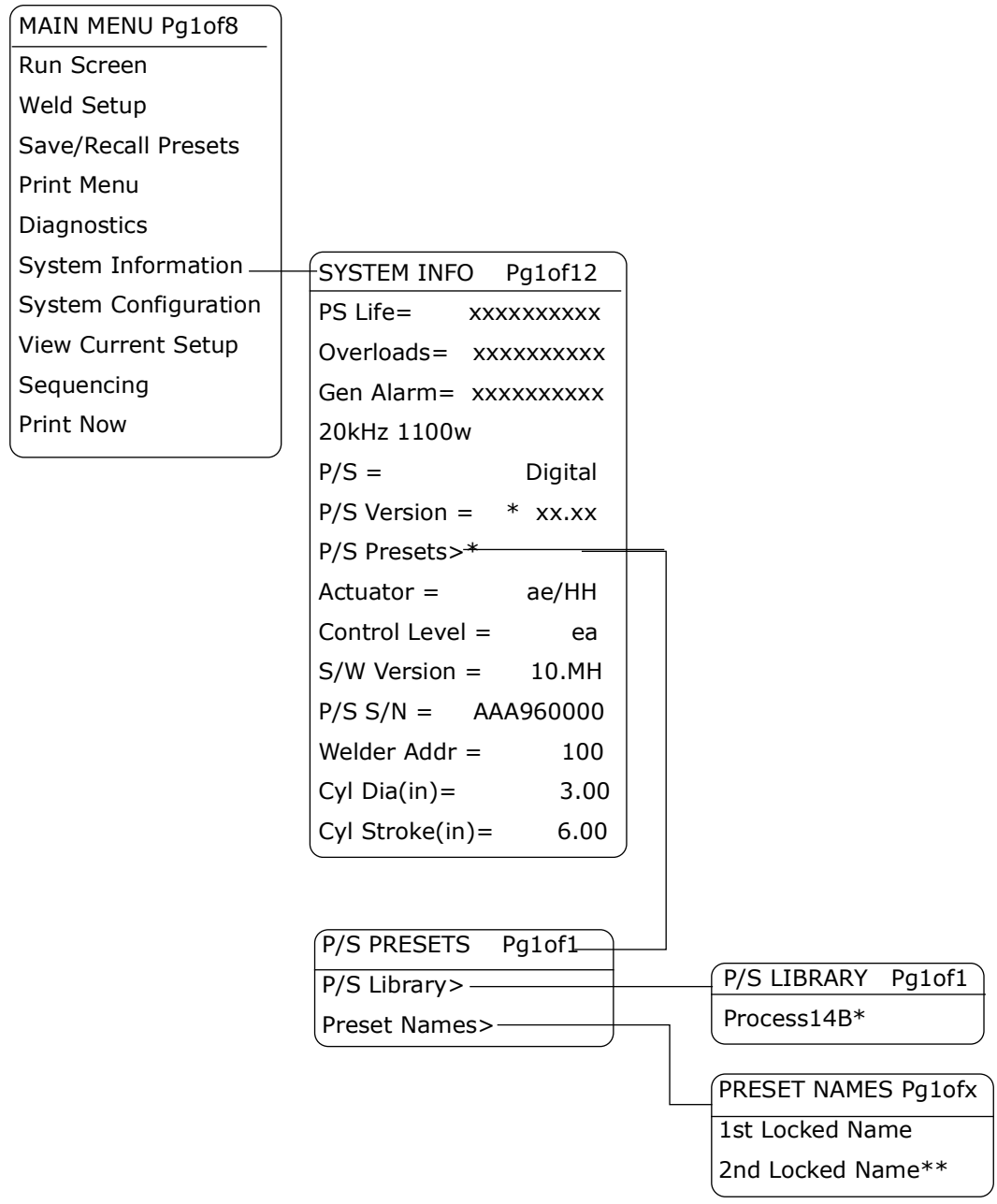
Table 6.39 Performing a Horn Scan

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Using the arrow keys, scroll downward through the menu to **Freq1(Hz)**. A frequency will be displayed if a scan was performed. If more than one resonant frequency was found in the scan window, they will be shown by continuing to scroll using the arrow keys. Up to six frequencies can be displayed.	HORN SCAN Pg1of6 Start Scan Print Scan Graph Freq1(Hz)=	

6.8 Viewing System Information

You can view information from the System Information screen about the current setup of your System. The following page shows a map of the System Information menu.

2000X Power Supply Menu Map: System Information



NOTICE

This menu reflects Version 10.X software.

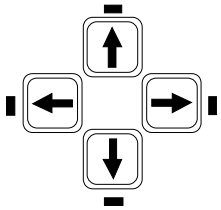
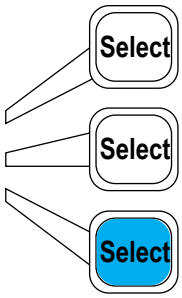
* 20 character block name

** List can be up to 19 names, but will always contain at least one.

Viewing System Information

You can view information about your Power Supply using the System Information menu. You should do this before calling Branson for support.

Table 6.40 Viewing System Information

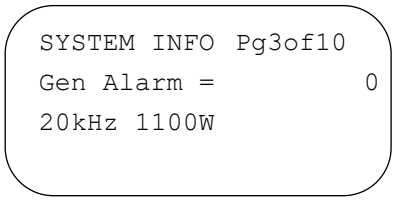
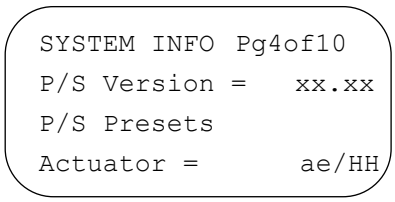
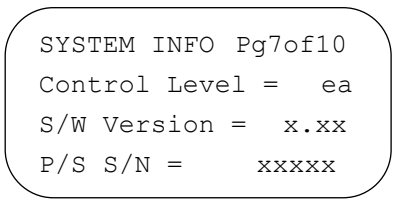
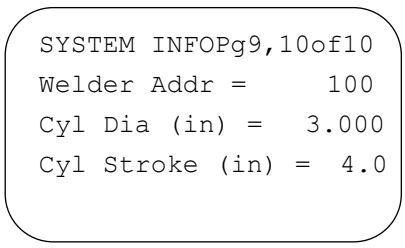
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Main Menu** key.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Run Screen Weld Setup Save/Recall Presets	
Scroll downward through the **Main Menu** until you see **System Information**.	MAIN MENU Pg4of6 Print Menu Diagnostics System Information	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **System Information**.	MAIN MENU Pg1of6 Print Menu Diagnostics System Information	

You will see the **SYSTEM INFO** submenu, where you can scroll through the list of System Information. This is a read-only list. Each parameter is described below:

- PS Life: indicates the total number of cycles on the Power Supply
- Overloads: indicates the number of times the Power Supply has been overloaded

SYSTEM INFO Pg1of10
Calibration Data>
PS Life = xxxxx
Overloads = xxxxx

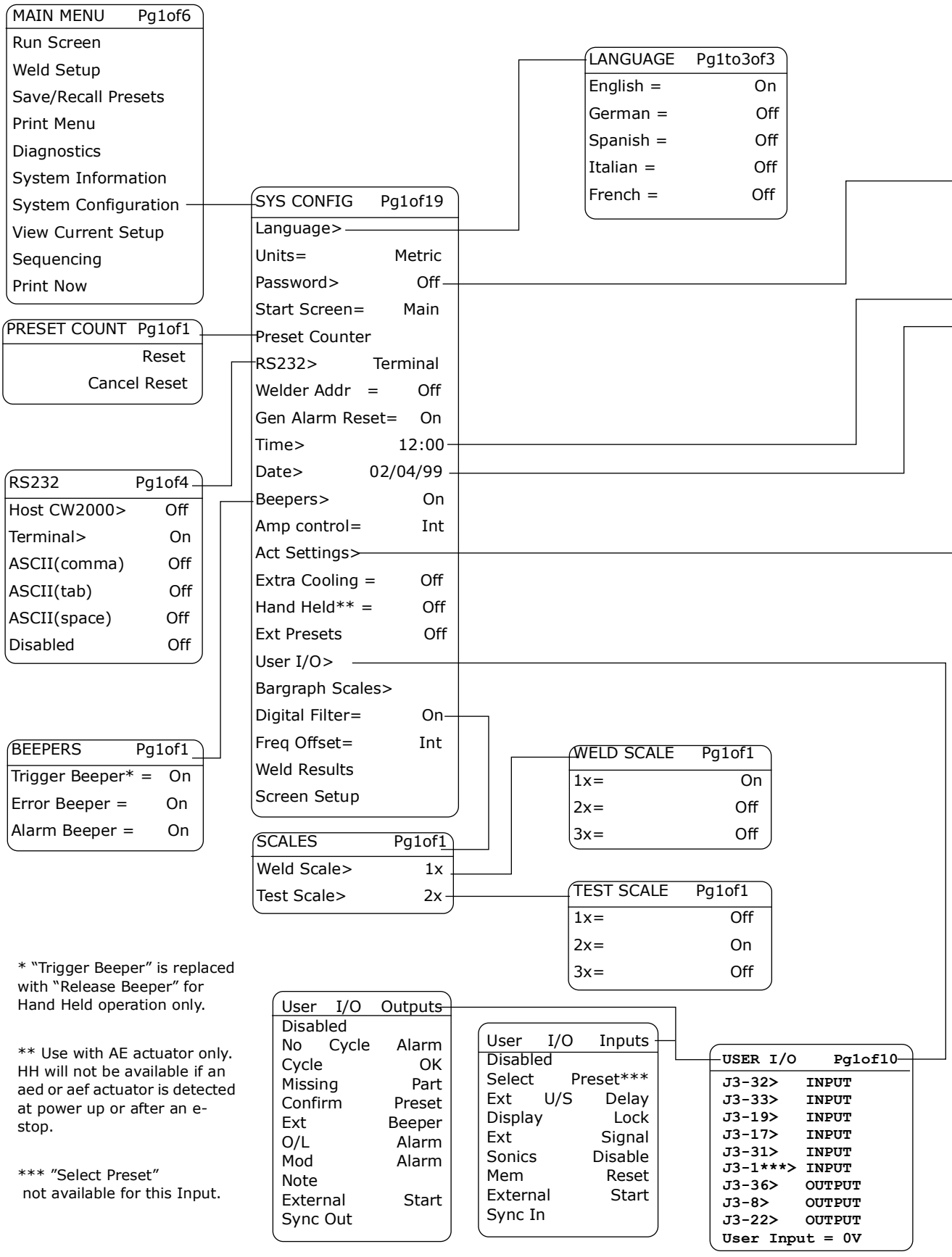
Table 6.40 Viewing System Information

Take this action	To get this result	Key
• Gen Alarm: indicates the number of times the Power Supply has had general alarms • 20 kHz 1100 W: this line indicates the frequency and wattage of your Power Supply		
• P/S Version: indicates digital Power Supply software version. (Currently not shown) • P/S Presets: indicates Preset names and library name • Actuator: indicates the model actuator that is attached to your Power Supply		
• Control Level: indicates the feature level of the controller installed in your Power Supply • S/W Version: Indicates the software version • P/S S/N: indicates the serial number of the Power Supply		
• Welder Addr: Turn on to assign a unique trackable number to a welder for data collection • Cyl Dia (in): indicates the diameter of the cylinder • Cyl Stroke (in): indicates the length of the stroke		

6.9 Using the System Configuration Menu

You can use the System Configuration Menu to select the language to be used, set units in which the Power Supply will operate (that is, Metric or USCS), enter a password, reset counters or alarms, set the date or time, turn beeper controls on or off, and perform other system-related changes. The following two pages show a map of the menu choices available to you from the System Configuration menu.

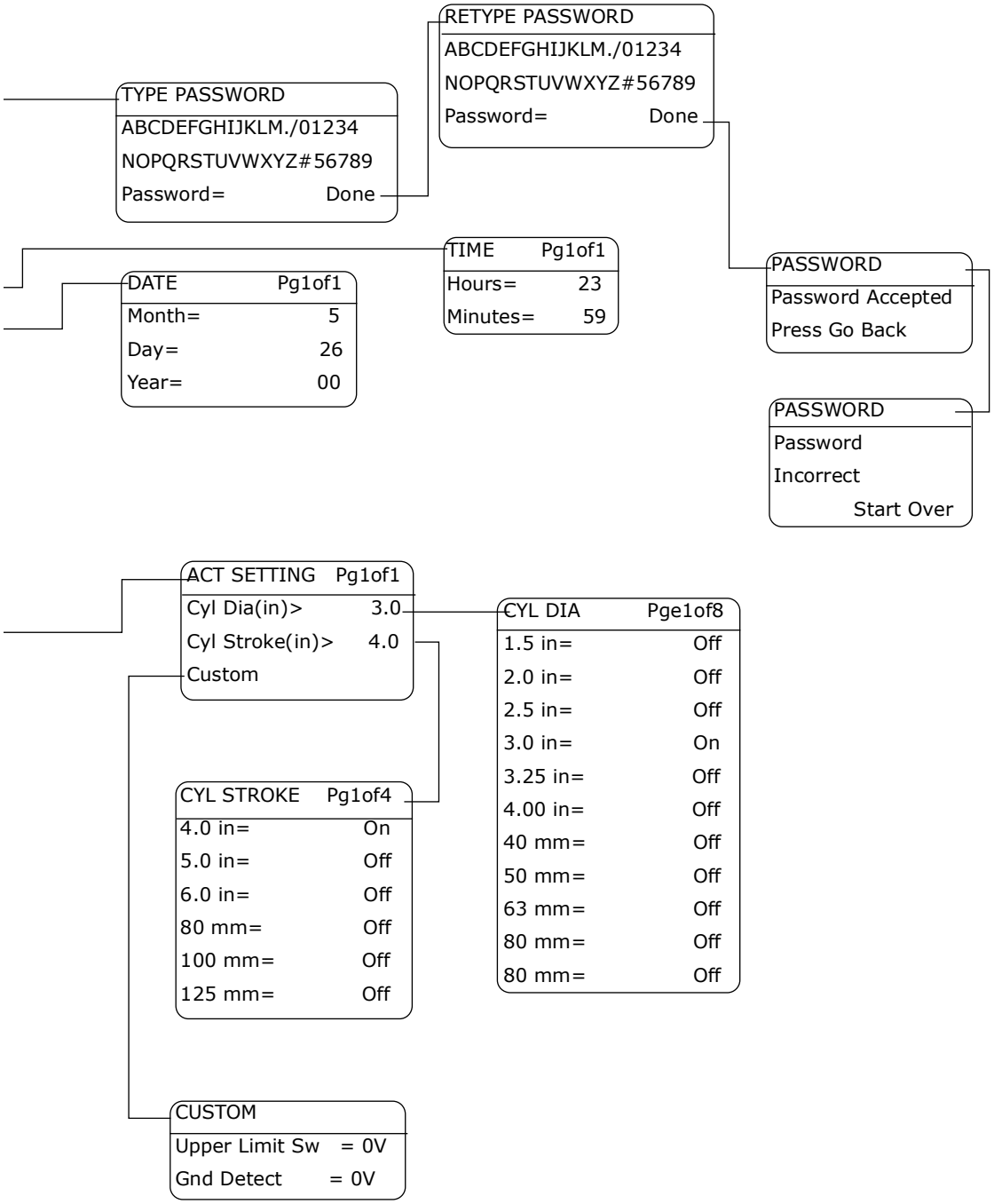
2000X Power Supply Menu Map: System Configuration



* "Trigger Beeper" is replaced with "Release Beeper" for Hand Held operation only.

** Use with AE actuator only. HH will not be available if an aed or aef actuator is detected at power up or after an e-stop.

*** "Select Preset" not available for this Input.


TYPE PASSWORD
ABCDEFGHIJKLM./01234
NOPQRSTUVWXYZ#56789
Password= Done
RETYPE PASSWORD
ABCDEFGHIJKLM./01234
NOPQRSTUVWXYZ#56789
Password= Done
PASSWORD
Password Accepted
Press Go Back
PASSWORD
Password
Incorrect
Start Over
TIME Pg1of1
Hours= 23
Minutes= 59
DATE Pg1of1
Month= 5
Day= 26
Year= 00
ACT SETTING Pg1of1
Cyl Dia(in)> 3.0
Cyl Stroke(in)> 4.0
Custom
CYL DIA Pge1of8
1.5 in= Off
2.0 in= Off
2.5 in= Off
3.0 in= On
3.25 in= Off
4.00 in= Off
40 mm= Off
50 mm= Off
63 mm= Off
80 mm= Off
80 mm= Off
CYL STROKE Pg1of4
4.0 in= On
5.0 in= Off
6.0 in= Off
80 mm= Off
100 mm= Off
125 mm= Off
CUSTOM
Upper Limit Sw = 0V
Gnd Detect = 0V

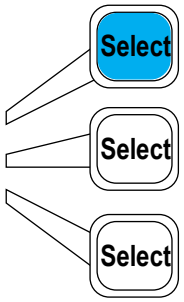
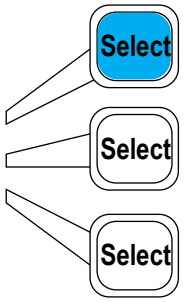
Each parameter in the System Configuration menu is described below:

- Language: allows you to select English, German, Spanish, Italian or French language text. NOTE: After selecting language, press Enter, then GoBack/Esc
- Units: allows you to select USCS (English) or Metric units
- Password: allows you to set a password that limits access to the System Configuration Menu, weld setup or recalling a preset
- Start Screen: allows you to choose whether to start at the Main menu or Run screen on power up
- Preset Counter: allows you to reset the running preset counter
- RS232: allows you to turn the Host Computer operation of the Power Supply on and off. Additionally, weld data is sent out through the serial port after each weld as an ASCII string and can be read by either a PC or PLC
- Welder Address: identifies welder used for data collection. 4 digit numeric ID, from 1 to 9999
- Gen Alarm Reset: allows you to set whether a reset is required following a general alarm condition
- Time: allows you to set the current time, in HH:MM format, on a 24-hour clock
- Date: allows you to set the current date, in MM/DD/YY format
- Beepers: allows you to turn the Trigger Beeper, the Error Beeper, and the Alarm Beeper on and off. For Hand Held operation, Trigger Beeper is replaced by Release Beeper. The Release Beeper, if enabled, will sound with a single 500ms pulse when the cycle start signal can be released
- P/S Settings: allows Power Supply selection, and configuration for the analog supply
- Amp Control: allows you to set whether amplitude is controlled internally (INT) or externally (EXT)
- Extra Cooling: when On, allows cooling air to start when upper limit switch is triggered and remain on throughout cycle. When Off, air is applied at ultrasonics application
- Act Settings: allows you to set the diameter (in inches or millimeters) of your cylinder, and the stroke length in inches or millimeters
- Hand Held: is turned On or Off. Hand Held will run in Time, Energy, Ground Detect and Peak Power modes except for control level “t”. “t” will only run Time and Ground Detect modes
- Ext Presets: is turned On or Off and can be used in both normal and Hand Held modes
- User I/O: allows you to define how configurable inputs/outputs are used
- Bar Graph Scales: allows you to set the weld scale and test scale to 1X, 2X, or 3X
- Digital Filter: allows you to turn the digital filter for graphing on or off
- Freq Offset: allows you to set whether the frequency offset is internally (INT) or externally (EXT) controlled

Selecting Language for the Power Supply

You can select English, German, Spanish, Italian or French as your language of choice.

Table 6.41 Selecting Language for the Power Supply

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Language**.	SYS CONFIG Pg1of19 Language> Units =USCS Password> =Off	
Press the **Select** key to toggle your language choice to On, and all other choices to Off. Scroll downward to select Italian or French. Press **Enter** on the numeric keypad to complete selection. You must then press **Go Back/Esc** key to insure all other keys will function properly in the newly selected language. All subsequent screens will be displayed in the language of choice.	LANGUAGE Pg1,2,3of3 English= On German= Off Spanish= Off Italian= Off French= Off	

Selecting Units for the Power Supply

You can choose to use USCS or metric units for measurements in the Power Supply.

Table 6.42 Selecting Units for the Power Supply

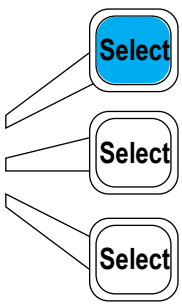
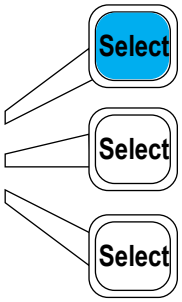
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Units**.	SYS CONFIG Pg1of19 Units =USCS Password> =Off Start Screen =Run	

Table 6.42 Selecting Units for the Power Supply

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between USCS and Metric. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Units** to the value you want.	SYS CONFIG Pg1of19 Units =Metric Password> =Off Start Screen =Run	

Setting a Password

You can set a password to protect your settings in the Power Supply.

Table 6.43 Setting a Password

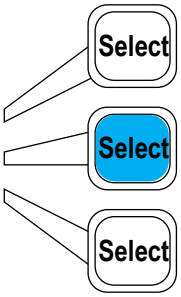
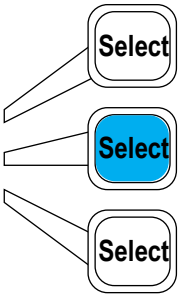
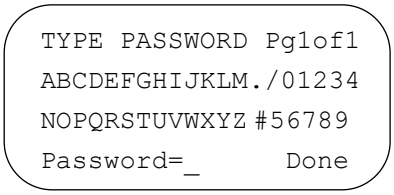
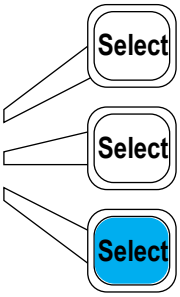
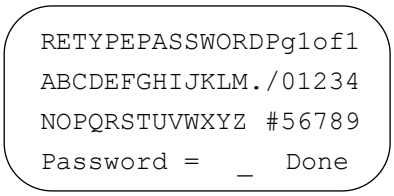
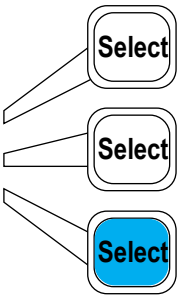
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Password** on the **System Config** menu.	SYS CONFIG Pg1of19 Units =USCS Password> =Off Start Screen =Run	
Press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between Off and On. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Password** to the value you want.	SYS CONFIG Pg2of19 Units =USCS Password> =On Start Screen =Run	

Table 6.43 Setting a Password

Take this action	To get this result	Key
If you set Password to On > **Enter**, you will see the **TYPE PASSWORD** submenu. Use the arrow keys to scroll through the alphanumeric characters shown on the display and select each character of your password by pressing the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad. You can also select a password by using the numeric keypad. As you select a character, you will see an asterisk displayed next to **Password=**. When you have entered your entire password, up to six characters, press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Done**.		
Retype your password in the same way to confirm. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Done** when you have finished. You will see a message confirming that your password has been accepted. If your password has not been accepted, you will see a message displayed "Password Incorrect Start Over".		

Selecting a Start Screen

You can choose whether to begin from the Main Menu or the Run screen, when you start up the Power Supply.

Table 6.44 Selecting a Start Screen

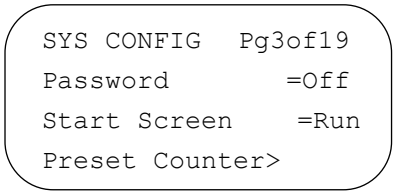
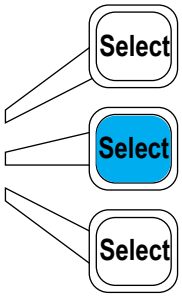
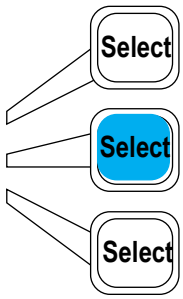
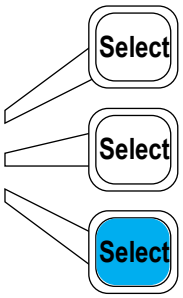
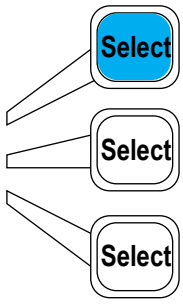
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Start Screen**.		

Table 6.44 Selecting a Start Screen

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between Main and Run. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Start Screen** to the value you want.	SYS CONFIG Pg3of19 Password =Off Start Screen =Run Preset Counter>	

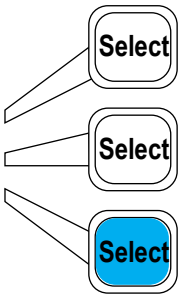
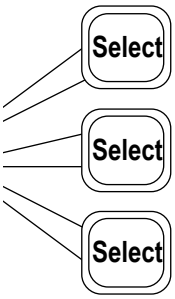
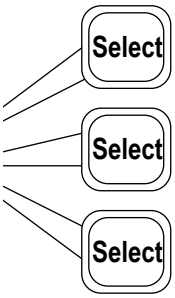
Resetting the Presets Counter

Table 6.45 Resetting the Presets Counter

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Preset Counter>**.	SYS CONFIG Pg4of19 Start Screen =Run Preset Counter> RS232> Terminal	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Reset**. The counter for the current preset will be reset.	PRESET COUNT Pg1of1 Reset Cancel Reset	

Setting Parameters for RS232

Table 6.46 Setting Parameters for RS232

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **RS232**.	SYS CONFIG Pg4of19 Start Screen =Main Preset Counter> RS232> Host/CW2000	
You will see the first page of the **RS232** submenu. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Host Computer, or ASCII(comma)**. Selection of any choice will toggle non selections Off. The ASCII(comma) selection generates an ASCII string of weld data out the serial port after each weld. Data is separated in this case by a comma. Other choices are on page 2 of this menu.	RS232 Pg1of4 Host/CW2000 =Off Terminal =On ASCII(comma) =Off	
You can choose the other forms of ASCII output from this menu. Data output choice is separated either by a tab or a space. Disabled On will cause all output from the serial port to cease.	RS232 Pg4of4 ASCII(tab) =Off ASCII(space) =Off Disabled =Off	

Data String Sample Output

The following examples illustrate the data string that is sent out through the serial port after each weld. IDID The table following these data strings shows the relationship between control levels. IDID can be any number from 1 to 9999. Table headings 1 through 3 respectively reference data string examples 1 through 3.

1. Sample Output for Control Level t with an ae actuator.

IDID@cccccccc@hh:mm:ss@MM/DD/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@sfff@aaaCRLF USCS units

IDID@cccccccc@hh:mm:ss@DD/MM/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@sfff@aaaCRLF Metric units

2. Sample output for Control Level ea, or d with an ae actuator.

IDID@cccccccc@hh:mm:ss@MM/DD/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@ppp.p@eeeee@sfff@aaa@bbbCRLF USCS units

IDID@cccccccc@hh:mm:ss@DD/MM/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@ppp.p@eeeee@sfff@aaa@bbbCRLF Metric units

3. Sample Output for Control Level d with an aed actuator.

IDID@cccccccc@hh:mm:ss@MM/DD/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@ppp.p@eeeee@w.wwww@z.zzzz@ x.xxxx@FFF@hhh@sfff@aaa@bbb@vv.vCRLF USCS units

IDID@cccccccc@hh:mm:ss@DD/MM/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@ppp.p@eeeee@ww.www@zz.zzz@ xx.xxx@FFF@hhh@sfff@aaa@bbb@vv.vCRLF Metric units

Table 6.47 Code Output

1	2	3	4	Where	Definition
x	x	x	x	cccccccc@	is up to an 8-digit cycle count (Cycle Number)
x	x	x	x	hh:mm:ss@	is time of cycle in hours, minutes and seconds (Time)
x	x	x	x	MM/DD/YY@	is date in month, day and year (Date)
x	x	x	x	Mode@	is weld mode (TIME, ENERGY, PKPWR, COL. ABS, G DET)
x	x	x	x	tt.ttt@	length of ultrasonics in seconds (Act. Time)
	x	x	x	ppp.p@	is the peak power in percentage (Peak Power)
	x	x	x	eeeee@	is energy in joules (Act. Ener)
		x	x	w.wwww@	is absolute distance at end of hold in inches or mm (Total Absolute)
		x	x	z.zzzz@	is collapse at end of weld in inches or mm (Weld Collapse)
		x	x	x.xxxx@	is collapse at end of hold in inches or mm (Total Collapse)
		x	x	FFF@	is the trigger force in pounds or Newton's (Trig. Force)

Table 6.47 Code Output

1	2	3	4	Where	Definition
			x	AAA@	is set weld force or force A in pounds or Newton's (Set Force A)
			x	BBB@	is set force B in pounds or Newton's or N/A (Set Force B)
		x	x	hhh@	is the weld force in pounds or Newton's (Weld Force)
x	x	x	x	sfff@	is frequency change (Hz) from start of ultrasonics to end (Freq. Chg)
x	x	x	x	aaa@	is the set amplitude (or amplitude A) in percentage (Set AmpA)
	x	x	x	bbb@	is the set amplitude B in percentage or N/A (Set AmpB)
		x	x	CRLF	is the Carriage Return, Line Feed
		x	x	vv.v	is the velocity in in/sec or mm/sec (Act. Vel)
x	x	x	x	@	is either a space, tab or comma as selected by user
x	x	x	x	IDID	is a 4 digit # assigned by "welder Addr" in system configuration

Using Welder Address

Table 6.48 Using Welder Address

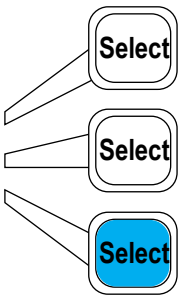
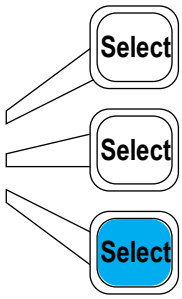
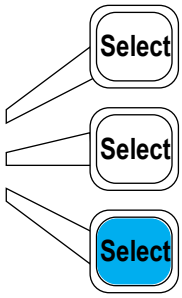
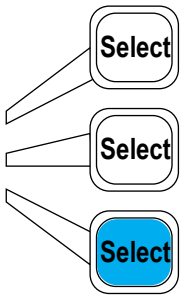
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Welder Addr**. Press **Enter**.	SYS CONFIG Pg5of13 Preset Counter> RS232> Terminal Welder Addr = Off	

Table 6.48 Using Welder Address

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Use the numeric keypad to enter the **Welder Addr** identification number that you want to use, or press the same **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between the minimum value (1), and the maximum value (9999) for **Welder Addr or Off to disable the Welder Addr.**	SYS CONFIG Pg5of13 Preset Counter> RS232> Terminal Welder Addr = 1234	

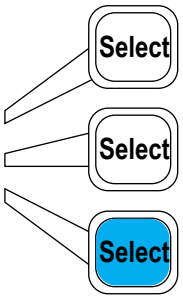
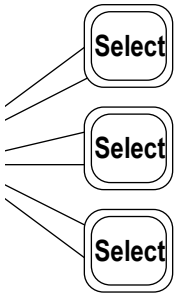
Turning the General Alarm Reset On or Off

Table 6.49 Turning the General Alarm Reset On or Off

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Gen Alarm Reset**.	SYS CONFIG Pg5of13 Preset Counter> RS232> Terminal Gen Alarm Reset =Off	
Press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between Off and On. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **General Alarm Reset** to the function you want.	SYS CONFIG Pg5of13 Preset Counter> RS232> Terminal Gen Alarm Reset =On	

Setting the System Time

Table 6.50 Setting the System Time

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Time**.	SYS CONFIG Pg6of13 RS232> Terminal Gen Alarm Reset =Off Time> 18:43	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to Hours or Minutes, and use the numeric keypad to set the time, on a 24-hour clock. Press the **Go Back/Esc** key when you have finished setting the time.	TIME Pg1of1 Hours =18 Minutes =43	

Setting the System Date

Table 6.51 Setting the System Date

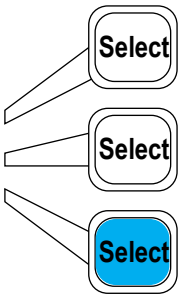
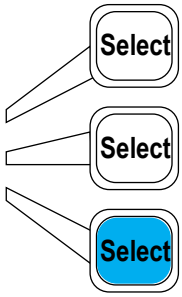
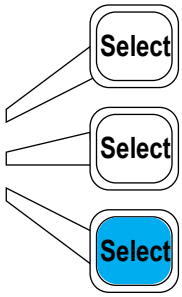
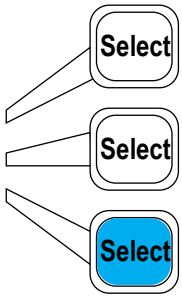
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Date**.	SYS CONFIG Pg7of13 Gen Alarm Reset =No Time> 18:43 Date> 10/25/00	

Table 6.51 Setting the System Date

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to Month, Day, or Year, and use the numeric keypad to set the date. Press the **Go Back/Esc** key when you have finished setting the date.	DATE Pg1of1 Month =10 Day =25 Year =98	

Turning Beepers On or Off

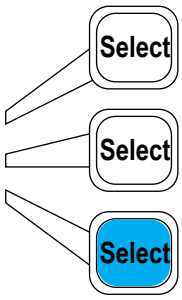
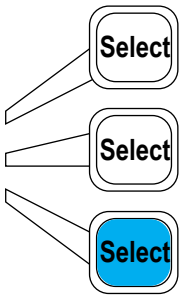
Table 6.52 Turning Beeper On or Off

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Beepers**.	SYS CONFIG Pg8of13 Time> =18:43 Date> 09/15/98 Beepers>	
You will see the **Beepers** submenu. For each type of beeper, Trigger, Error, and Alarm, press the corresponding **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between On and Off. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Beepers** to the state you want. Press the Go Back/Esc key when you have finished setting the beepers.	BEEPERS Pg1of1 Trigger Beeper =On Error Beeper =On Alarm Beeper =On	

Setting the Amplitude Control

If you set the Amplitude Control to External, you must connect an external voltage-scaling device to the I/O connector. If nothing is connected, only 50% amplitude will be reached.

Table 6.53 Setting the Amplitude Control

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Amp Control**.	SYS CONFIG Pg11of19 Beepers> P/S Settings> Amp Control =Int	
Press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between Int and Ext. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Amp Control** to the state you want.	SYSCONFIG Pg11of19 Beepers> P/S Settings> Amp Control =Ext	

Setting the Cylinder Diameter

Table 6.54 Setting the Cylinder Diameter

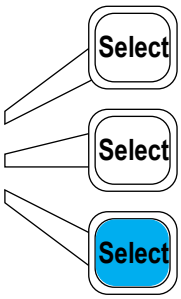
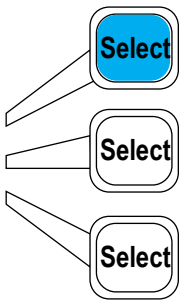
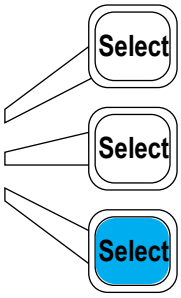
Take this action	To get this result	Key
From the **System Configuration** menu, press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Act Settings**.	SYS CONFIG Pg12of19 Beepers> Amp Control =Int Act Settings>	
You will see the **ACT SETTING** submenu. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Cyl Dia**.	ACT SETTING Pg1of1 Cyl Dia (in)> 1.5 Cyl Stroke (in)>4.0 Custom>	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to the cylinder size you are using. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have selected the size.	CYL DIA Pg1of8 1.5 in =On 2.0 in =Off 2.5 in =Off	
	CYL DIA Pg4of8 3.0 (in) =Off 3.25 (in) =Off 4.0 (in) =Off	

Table 6.54 Setting the Cylinder Diameter

Take this action	To get this result	Key
	CYL DIA Pg7of8 40 (mm) =Off 50 (mm) =Off 63 (mm) =Off	
	CYL DIA Pg8of8 80(mm) =Off	

Setting the Cylinder Stroke

Table 6.55 Setting the Cylinder Stroke

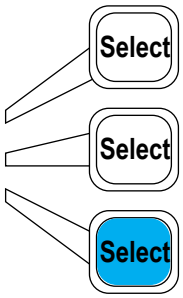
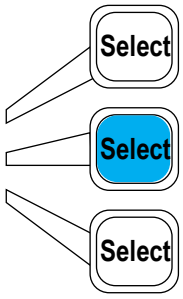
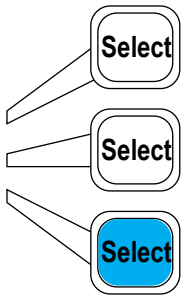
Take this action	To get this result	Key
From the **System Configuration** menu, press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Act Settings**.	SYS CONFIG Pg10of13 Beepers> Amp Control =Int Act Settings>	
You will see the **ACT SETTING** submenu. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Cyl Stroke**.	ACT SETTING Pg1of1 Cyl Dia (in)> 1.5 Cyl Stroke (in)>4.0	

Table 6.55 Setting the Cylinder Stroke

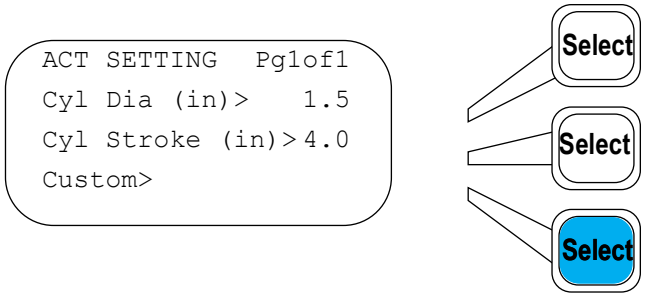
Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to the stroke length you are using. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have selected the length.	CYL STROKE Pg1of4 4.0 in =On 5.0 in =Off 6.0 in =Off CYL STROKE Pg4of4 80 (mm) =Off 100 (mm) =Off 125 (mm) =Off	

Custom Actuator Settings

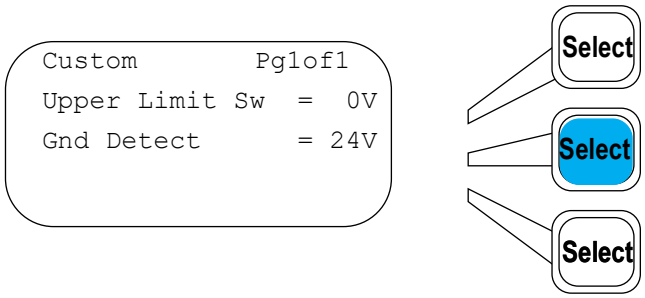
Use these settings to reconfigure standard I/O to use 0V or 24V levels, reassigning user I/O functions.

Table 6.56 Custom Actuator Settings

You will see the **ACT SETTING** submenu. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Custom**.



Selecting Custom will display this screen where you can choose to set either Gnd Detect or Upper Limit Sw to 0V or 24V.



Setting Extra Cooling

Table 6.57 Setting Extra Cooling

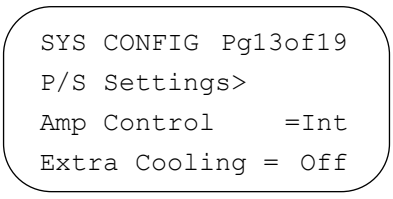
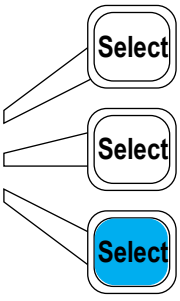
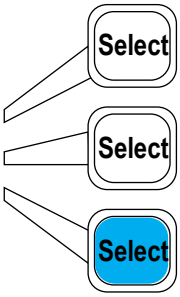
Take this action	To get this result	Key
From the **System Configuration** menu, press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Extra Cooling**. This will toggle the function On and Off. With the cooling Off, cooling air will not be applied until ultrasonics is applied		

Table 6.57 Setting Extra Cooling

Take this action	To get this result	Key
When you are configured for 30 kHz operation, **Extra Cooling** will default to On. The cooling air will then be triggered **On** from the Upper Limit switch, and remain on through the entire cycle. You can override 30 kHz operation by turning this to Off.	SYS CONFIG Pg13of19 P/S Settings> Amp Control =Int Extra Cooling = On	

Hand Held

Hand Held is accessed and turned On or Off in the System Configuration menu. Hand Held will run in Time, Energy, Ground Detect and Peak Power modes.

Hand Held start function can be used with a hand held unit or a "Stack" system without an actuator. The start switch must be maintained until hold time is finished.

No start cable is required as only the RF and user I/O cables are used with an e-stop jumper plug (EDP No. 100-246-1178).

NOTICE	
	Once Hand Held is turned on, the power supply must be powered off and then back on. This prevents the Door/Trigger alarm from occurring.

The Hand Held cycle starts with a single start switch input. Either start switch is usable. The start switch must be maintained until the end of the cycle. The weld cycle includes weld time, hold time, afterburst if enabled and post weld seek if enabled. A beeper signals the end of the need for the start switches to be on.

A single start switch is an optional start condition and is only used when the normal PB or start input is not used. However, if used the Ext Signal must be turned on in systems configuration, User I/O Inputs, and the assigned pin hard wired.

The following Table defines failures and associated alarms when start signal is lost.

Table 6.58 Alarms and their causes

Alarm	Cause of Alarm
Trigger Lost in Weld	Start signal lost before ultrasonics ends
Trigger Lost in Hold	Start signal lost before Hold ends

Table 6.58 Alarms and their causes

Alarm	Cause of Alarm
No alarm, cycle stops abruptly, terminates Afterburst	Start signal lost during Afterburst
No alarm, cycle stops abruptly, terminates Post Weld Seek	Start signal lost during Post Weld Seek

NOTICE	
	The Trigger Lost in Weld, or Trigger Lost in Hold alarms will result in an aborted cycle but the weld cycle counter will still be incremented.

NOTICE	
	If the trigger is lost during Afterburst or Post Weld Seek, no alarm will result, but the balance of the cycle will still be aborted and counted.

- Afterburst and Post Weld Seek are available, but the start switch must be maintained through either of them
- Although Pretrigger is shown in the menu, is not functional
- All cutoffs and limits for an AE actuator are available, limited only by the control level of your power supply
- Factory default for Hand Held is off. Cold start will not affect the setting
- The Start Switch Closed alarm has been extended to 6 seconds for all modes
- The PB Released output should be used to signal the PLC to release the start

NOTICE	
	Use with AE actuator only. HH will not be available if an aed actuator is detected at power up or after an e-stop.

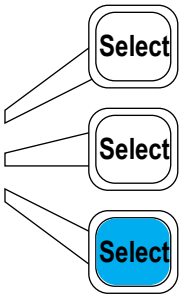
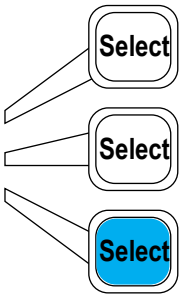
Ext Presets

Toggle Ext Presets On and Off, >Enter choice.

Configuring the User I/O

User I/O Menu is used to configure custom actuator inputs and outputs. The User I/O menu can only be entered when the welder is not in the process of welding. If the welder is welding, the beeper will sound and entry will be denied. When entry does occur, the welder will no longer be ready, preventing welding, horn down and test. If horn down is not available, a 2-second message will be displayed indicating horn down is not available.

Table 6.59 Configuring the User I/O

Take this action	To get this result	Key
From the **System Configuration** menu, scroll down to **User I/O** and press the **Select** key that corresponds to **User I/O**. This will toggle the function On and Off. The following screen shows a portion of the configurable Input and Output pins that are accessable at J3 when toggled to On.	SYS CONFIG Pg16of19 Hand Held = Off Ext Presets = Off User I/O	
This screen shows the 6 configurable INPUTs and 3 configurable OUTPUTs. The tables below list the features that can be accessed and selected for each of the INPUT and OUTPUT pins respectively at J3. Please note the pin J3-1 Input exception. User Inputs: toggle to change from 0 to 24V. Ext Start Delay: use keypad to enter value, >Enter. Factory Defaults: Select OK to revert back to factory defaults. Option is Cancel.	User I/O Pg1to10of10 J3-32 INPUT >| J3-33 INPUT >| J3-19 INPUT >| J3-17 INPUT >| J3-31 INPUT >| J3-1 INPUT >| J3-8 OUTPUT >| J3-36 OUTPUT >| J3-22 OUTPUT >| User Inputs =24V Ext Start Dly =5.000 Factory Defaults	

Refer to the Branson Automation Guide (EDP 100-214-273) for additional information about selection and use of Input and Output features listed in the following Table.

User I/O Inputs	User I/O Outputs
Disabled	Disabled
Select Preset *	No Cycle Alarm
Ext Trg Delay	Cycle OK
Display Lock	Missing Part
Ext Signal	Confirm Preset
Sonics Disable	Amplitude Delay
Mem Reset	Ext Beeper
SV Interlock	O/L Alarm
Sync In	Modified Alarm
	Note
*This option is not available at J3-1 Input.	SV Interlock
	Sync Out

User Definable I/O

This feature allows the user to select from a list of features, and assign the feature to their choice of input or output pin on the I/O connector J3. The User Definable I/Os can be disabled.

There are 8 available features for the 6 available J3 inputs. These features are described in the following Table.

Table 6.60 Features for User I/O Inputs

Feature No.	Feature Name	Feature Description
1	Select Preset	Select up to 16 presets from 5 of the inputs (J3-1 input does not have this feature)
2	Display Lock	When User I/O Input Display Lock is turned on, the front panel display cannot access any means of changing the current display.
3	External Signal	This input is used to enable Amplitude or Force stepping, and in Hand Held mode for starting sonics.
4	External U/S Delay	Delays starting of ultrasonics up to 30 seconds after trigger conditions are met.
5	Sonics Disable	This is a form of Dry Cycle. It allows running a preset as defined, but not turning on ultrasonics.
6	Memory Reset	Center power supply when input is active, used for sequencing.

Table 6.60 Features for User I/O Inputs

Feature No.	Feature Name	Feature Description
7	External Start	Allows power supply to close safety door, then start weld cycle. Start signal would activate this External Start output. When the External Start input becomes active then the SV is activated. Must be used with External Start input.
8	Sync In	Works in conjunction with Sync Out to Allow several welders to work together and start sonics on all welders at the same time after all have triggered.

There are 10 available features for the 3 available J3 outputs. These are described in the following Table.

Table 6.61 Features for User I/O Outputs

Feature No.	Feature Name	Feature Description
1	External Beeper	Echoes the same signal that goes to the internal beeper.
2	Cycle OK	Means a complete cycle was run and there were no alarms.
3	Confirm Preset	An external preset change request has been honored.
4	No Cycle Alarm	Active when a No Cycle alarm occurs. It is cleared by the next cycle or a reset.
5	Overload Alarm	Active whenever an overload alarm occurs. It is cleared by the next cycle or a reset.
6	Modified Alarm	Active whenever a modified cycle alarm occurs, i.e. peak power cutoff. It is cleared by the next cycle or a reset.
7	Note	Active whenever a Note (warning) occurs. It is cleared by the next cycle or a reset.
8	Missing Part	Active whenever the missing part alarm occurs. It is cleared by the next cycle or a reset.
9	External Start	Allows power supply to close clamp, then start weld cycle. Start signal would activate this External Start output. When the External Start input becomes active, then the SV is activated. Must be used with External Start input.
10	Sync Out	Works in conjunction with Sync In allowing several welders to work together and start sonics on all welders at the same time after all have triggered.

NOTICE	
	For additional information about how to use these features, refer to the Branson Automation Guide.

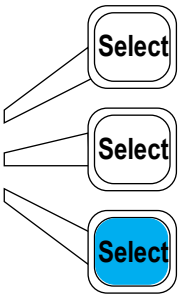
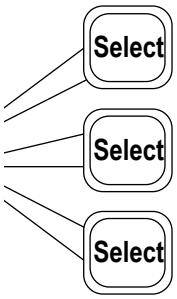
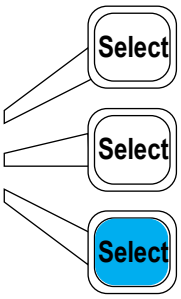
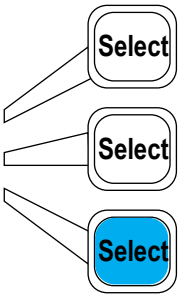
External Presets

External selection of (up to 12) presets is accessed and turned On or Off in the System Configuration menu. This feature can be used in both normal and Hand Held modes. The selection goes into effect for the next weld cycle. When enabled, inputs can be read when either start switch is received to start a new cycle. The five user inputs (J3-17, J3-19, J3-31, J3-32, J3-33) are used to decode which preset is recalled.

- When a preset is recalled, it will be verified
- A new alarm message has been added that will indicate that a preset has not been defined (saved) or an attempt has been made to recall a preset not available for a control level
- External selection of presets will default to off. Cold start will not affect the setting

Setting the Scale for Bar Graphs

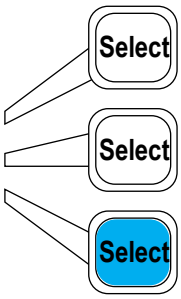
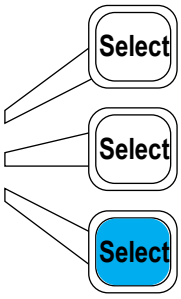
Table 6.62 Setting the Scale for Bar Graphs

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Bar Graph Scales**.	SYS CONFIG Pg17of19 Act Settings> Amp Control =Int Bargraph Scales>	
You will see the **SCALES** submenu. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Weld Scale** or **Test Scale** to set the scale for those graphs.	SCALES Pg1of1 Weld Scale> 1X Test Scale> 1X	
If you selected **Weld Scale** from the **SCALES** submenu, press the **Select** key that corresponds to the **Weld Scale** you want to use. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Weld Scale** to the value you want. You can only select one value.	WELD SCALE Pg1of1 1X =On 2X =Off 3X =Off	
If you selected **Test Scale** from the **SCALES** submenu, press the **Select** key that corresponds to the **Test Scale** you want to use. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Test Scale** to the value you want. You can only select one value.	TEST SCALE Pg1of1 1X =Off 2X =On 3X =Off	

Turning the Digital Filter On or Off

NOTICE	
	Branson recommends that you set the Digital Filter to On.

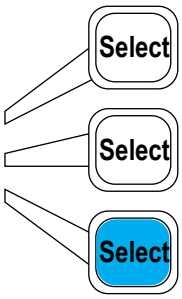
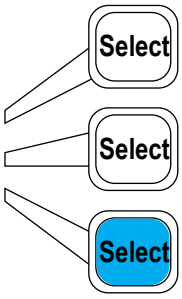
Table 6.63 Turning the Digital Filter On or Off

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Digital Filter**.	SYS CONFIG Pg18of19 Act Settings> Bargraph Scales> Digital Filter =On	
Press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between On and Off. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Digital Filter** to the value you want. You will return to the **Main Menu**.	SYS CONFIG Pg18of19 Act Settings> Bargraph Scales> Digital Filter = Off	

Setting the Frequency Offset Control

NOTICE	
	**Do not** use this feature unless advised to do so by Branson.

Table 6.64 Setting the Frequency Offset Control

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Freq Offset**.	SYS CONFIG Pg19of19 Bargraph Scales> Digital Filter =On Freq Offset =Int	
Press the **Select** key repeatedly to toggle between Int and Ext. Press the **Enter** key on the numeric keypad when you have set **Freq Offset** to the value you want. You will return to the **Main Menu**.	SYS CONFIG Pg19of19 Bargraph Scales> Digital Filter = On Freq Offset = Ext	

6.10 Using the Horn Down Feature

You can use the **Horn Down** key to verify that your fixture is properly set up or to determine the absolute distance that the horn needs to travel to weld your parts. After pressing the **Horn Down** key you can press the Start Switches, or you can use manual override to bring the horn down to the position you have set *without* ultrasonic energy on by using the mechanical stop. Once the horn is in position, you can release the Start Switches in order to verify your setup. You can also disconnect air and manually bring the horn down to read distance and align your fixture.

Using the Horn Down Feature

You can use the Horn Down feature on the Power Supply to verify that your fixture is correctly placed, so that the horn will contact your part properly.

Table 6.65 Using the Horn Down Feature

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Press the **Horn Down** key. You will see the **Horn Down** screen, indicating that you should press the **Start Switches**.	HORN DOWN Pg1of1 Press Start Switches Until Beep is Heard	Horn Down

WARNING
Do NOT set Downspeed adjustment knob initially to a value that is greater than 20. Unexpected excessive downspeed can create a dangerous situation.

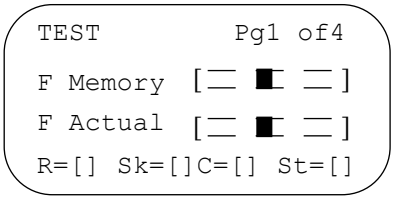
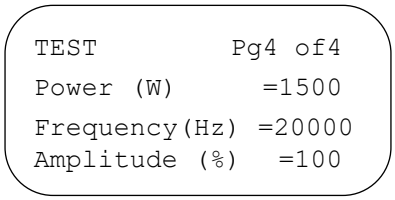
6.11 Using the Test Feature

You can use the **Test** key on the Power Supply to view the status of a test cycle. You can view information on the power and frequency of the test cycle and change the amplitude directly to determine its impact on the other settings through a test cycle.

Using the Test Feature

You can use the Test key to view information about a test cycle.

Table 6.66 Using the Test Feature

Take this action	To get this result
Press the **Test** key. You will see the **Test** screen.	
You can view information about the on-board microprocessor in your Power Supply including frequency in memory and actual frequency, as well as the Run, Seek, Clear, and Store features.	
You can use the up and down arrow keys to scroll through this menu and view the power, frequency, and amplitude of the most recent cycle.	
You can use the **Select** key that corresponds to **Amplitude** and the numeric keypad to change the amplitude directly from this screen. If you choose to do this, you might want to run another test to observe how the change in amplitude impacts the other parameters.	
Press the **Go Back/Esc** key to exit the **Test** menu and return to the menu you were viewing before you began the **Test** procedure.	

Chapter 7: Maintenance

WARNING	
	When performing maintenance on the welder, make sure that no other automated systems are active.

7.1 2000 Series Preventive Maintenance

CAUTION	
	Be certain to disconnect power before performing any maintenance on the power supply or actuator.

The following preventive measures help assure long term operation of your Branson 2000 Series equipment.

7.1.1 Periodically Clean the Equipment

Air is continuously drawn into the Branson power supply. Periodically disconnect the unit from power, remove the cover and vacuum out any accumulated dust and debris. Remove material adhering to the fan blades and motor, transistors, heat sinks, transformers, circuit boards, cooling intake vents, and exhaust ports. Filters can be added to the power supply cooling fans for dusty environments. External covers may be cleaned with a damp sponge or cloth using a solution of mild soap and water. Do not allow cleaning solution to enter the unit. To prevent rust in areas of high humidity, exposed steel surfaces, such as handles, hardware, and the main column may require a very light film of oil, such as WD-40.

7.1.2 Reconditioning the Stack (Converter, Booster, and Horn)

Stack components function with greatest efficiency when the mating interface surfaces are in proper condition. For 20 and 30 kHz products, a Branson Mylar® washer should be installed between the horn and booster and horn and converter. Replace the washer if torn or perforated. Stacks using Mylar washers should be inspected periodically.

Stacks used with silicone grease, as with certain 20 kHz installations and with all 40 kHz products, should be periodically reconditioned to eliminate fretting corrosion. A stack using silicone grease should be inspected periodically for corrosion. When experience is gained for specific stacks, the inspection interval can be adjusted to a longer or shorter period as required.

NOTICE	
	The operating efficiency of the equipment will be greatly affected if the mating interfaces of the converter, booster, and horn are not flat, make poor contact with each other, or become corroded. A poor contact condition wastes power and makes tuning difficult. It may also affect the noise level and damage the converter.

To recondition the interfaces:

1. Remove the stack from the actuator.
2. Disassemble the converter, booster, and horn stack. Observe the following rules:

In the event that you must disassemble a Stack, always use the correct spanner wrench and a suitable soft-faced vise to remove a horn or booster, and reverse the procedures described earlier in this Section.

CAUTION	
	NEVER attempt to remove a horn or booster by holding the converter housing or booster clamp ring in a vise.

NOTICE	
	Use a soft-jawed vise (brass or aluminum) to remove square or rectangular horns, or horns otherwise unremovable, by reversing the procedure detailed in Section 4.9 Assemble the Acoustic Stack.

3. Wipe the interfaces with a clean cloth or paper towel.
4. Examine all interfaces. If any interface is corroded or shows a dark, hard deposit, it should be reconditioned.
5. If the interfaces appear to be in good condition, go to step 13.
6. If necessary, remove the coupling studs.
7. Tape a clean sheet of #400 grit (or finer) emery cloth to a clean, smooth flat surface. A piece of glass is suitable.
8. Hold the part to be conditioned at its lower end and carefully stroke it in one direction across the emery cloth. Do not press down. the weight of the component provides enough pressure.
9. Perform a second stroke. Rotate the part 1/3 around and stroke it twice across the cloth.

NOTICE	
	Use no more than two strokes in one position. Use the same number of strokes at each location.

10. Turn the part the remaining 1/3 and repeat.
11. Re-examine the interface and repeat steps 8, 9, and 10 until the surface appears clean and smooth. This should not take more than 2 or 3 complete rotations of the part being reconditioned.
12. Clean the threaded hole, using a clean cloth or paper towel.
13. Replace the stud with a new one if removed. Torque M8x1-1/4 studs to 70 inch pounds (7.9 Nm). Torque the 3/8-24 studs to 290 inch pounds (32.77 Nm). Torque 1/2-20 studs to 450 inch pounds (50.84 Nm).

NOTICE	
	The use of a Branson torque wrench or the equivalent is recommended. P/N 101-063-787 for 20 kHz systems and 101-063-618 for 40 kHz systems.

CAUTION	
	Failure to follow torque specifications may cause the stud to loosen or break, and the system to overload. The use of a Branson torque wrench or equivalent is required.

14. Reassemble the stack and install it in the actuator, using the procedures in Section 4.7 Assemble the Acoustic Stack of this manual.

7.1.3 Routine Component Replacement

The lifetime of certain parts is based on the number of cycles the unit has completed, or on hours of operation. Table 7.1 lists the average number of hours or cycles one should use in determining when components should be replaced. Ambient operating temperature also affects lifetime. Higher temperatures reduce the number of cycles and hours before replacement is suggested. The charts below are for equipment operating at a temperature of 72 to 75° F (22 to 24° C).

The lifetime of system pneumatic components is influenced by the quality of the compressed air provided. All Branson systems require clean, dry, (normal) factory compressed air. When oil or moisture is present in the compressed air, the lifetime of the pneumatic components will be reduced. This table lists pneumatic parts with an average factory compressed air condition.

Table 7.1 Component Replacements Based on Cycles Run

Cycles	Component
At 10 Million Cycles	Air cylinder
	Hydraulic snubber
At 20 Million Cycles	Base Start Switches
	Proportional valve
	Air Filter, coalescing*
	Solenoid valves

Table 7.1 Component Replacements Based on Cycles Run

Cycles	Component
At 40 Million Cycles	Pressure regulator
	Air Filter, 5 micron*
	Cooling valve
	S-Beam Load Cell Assembly
	Encoder Assembly
	Linear Bearing (2" stroke or greater)

*Totally dependent on quality of house air supply.

7.2 Parts Lists

This section provides lists of replacement parts, system cables, and suggested spares.

7.2.1 Replacement Parts

Table 7.2 Replacement Parts List for 2000X Power Supply

Component	EDP Number
DC Power Supply Module*	200-132-294R
Line Board*	100-242-1199R (100-242-1230R for 4kW units)
System Controller Board*	101-063-824
Power Supply Module*	
400W / 40 kHz digital	100-244-039R
800W / 40 kHz digital	159-244-063R
750W / 30 kHz digital	100-244-104R
1.5kW / 30 kHz digital	159-244-065R
1.25kW / 20 kHz digital	100-244-102R
2.5kW / 20 kHz digital	100-244-103R
4kW / 20 kHz digital	159-244-075R
Switch, On / Off; 15A; DPST	1032510, 1032496
User I/O Board w/ mtg. bracket*	100-246-1197R
Washer, Mylar	
Kit, 10 each (1/2 in. and 3/8 in.)	100-063-357
Kit, 150 each (1/2 in.)	100-063-471
Kit, 150 each (3/8 in.)	100-063-472
Kit, 10 each (3/8 in., 30 kHz)	100-063-632
Fan	100-126-015R
CR2032 Battery for BBRAM	200-262-003
Cover	100-032-454
Cover Screws	200-298-254 (6 ea) 200-298-044 (1 ea)
VF Display	200-220-014
Line Cord	100-246-1371

Table 7.2 Replacement Parts List for 2000X Power Supply

Component	EDP Number
Miscellaneous	
Other parts such as wrenches, silicon grease, studs, etc., are found in Chapter 4: Installation and Setup. *Each of these items must be replaced as a unit.	

7.2.2 System Cables

You can order the following cables. If the cable you require is not listed, refer to 4.3.1 Cables of this manual for part number and cable model number.

Table 7.3 2000-Series System Cables (External)

P/N	Description	Cable Model
101-241-202	Cable, Remote Interface 8' to remote pneumatics package (ao actuator)	J924
101-241-203	Cable, Actuator Interface 8'	J925S
101-241-204	Cable, Actuator Interface 15'	J925S
101-241-205	Cable, Actuator Interface 25'	J925S
101-241-206	Cable, Actuator Interface 50'	J925S
101-240-020R	Cable, Start 8’	J911
101-240-015R	Cable, Start 15’	J911
101-240-010R	Cable, Start 25’	J911
101-240-168R	Cable, Start 50’	J911
101-241-207	Cable, User I/O 8'	J957S
101-241-208	Cable, User I/O 15'	J957S
101-241-209	Cable, User I/O 25'	J957S
101-241-258	Cable, User I/O 50'	J957S
101-240-017	Cable, RF CR & CJ20 8'	J931S
101-240-012	Cable, RF CR & CJ20 15'	J931S
101-240-007	Cable, RF CR & CJ20 25'	J931S
101-200-200	Cable, RF CR & CJ20 50'	J931
101-240-176	Cable, RF CR & CJ20 8' CE	J931CS
101-240-177	Cable, RF CR & CJ20 15' CE	J931CS
101-240-178	Cable, RF CR & CJ20 25' CE	J931CS
101-240-199	Cable, RF CR & CJ20 50' CE	J931C

Table 7.3 2000-Series System Cables (External)

P/N	Description	Cable Model
101-143-043R	Cable, Printer 6’	—
100-246-630	Cable, Ground Detect	-

NOTICE	
	Cables identified for ‘CJ-20 Converters’ are for those Converters when they are installed in Branson 2000 Actuators. The Cable connects to the Actuator.

7.2.3 Suggested Spares

Table 7.4 Suggested Spares

Description	EDP#	1-4 Units	6-12 Units	14+ Units
Replacement 2000X Control Board	101-063-1112	0	1	1
400w power supply module, digital	159-244-064R	0	0	1
800w power supply module, digital	159-244-063R	0	0	1
1.5kw power supply module, digital	159-244-065R	0	0	1
1.25kw power supply module, digital	100-244-107R	0	0	1
2.5kw power supply module, digital	100-244-103R	0	0	1
4kW power supply module, digital	159-244-075R	0	0	1
Front Panel Switch	1032510, 1032496	1	1	2
Line Board	100-242-1199R (100-242-1230R for 4kW units)	0	0	1
Line Fuse (s), 20a	200-049-015R	2	4	6
DC Fan	100-126-015R	2	2	4
Fan Filter Kit	101-063-614	*	*	*
I/O Board	100-242-1197R	0	1	2
Line Cord	100-246-947	0	1	2
Front Panel Display	200-220-014	0	1	1

Table 7.4 Suggested Spares

Description	EDP#	1-4 Units	6-12 Units	14+ Units
Membrane Panel	100-242-631R	0	0	1
DC Power Supply	200-132-294R			
RF Harness	100-246-949R	0	0	1
Front Bezel	100-004-030R	0	0	1

* Quantity varies depending on amount of airborne particulate in your environment.

7.2.4 Printer Part Numbers

Table 7.5 Printer Part Numbers

Printer Components	EDP Number
Printer Assembly	100-143-125
Printer Cable	100-143-043R

7.3 Circuits

Figure 7.1 shows a block diagram of the 2000 power supply and actuator. Figure 7.2 is an interconnect diagram of the 2000 power supply.

Figure 7.1 Block Diagram, Power Supply and Actuator

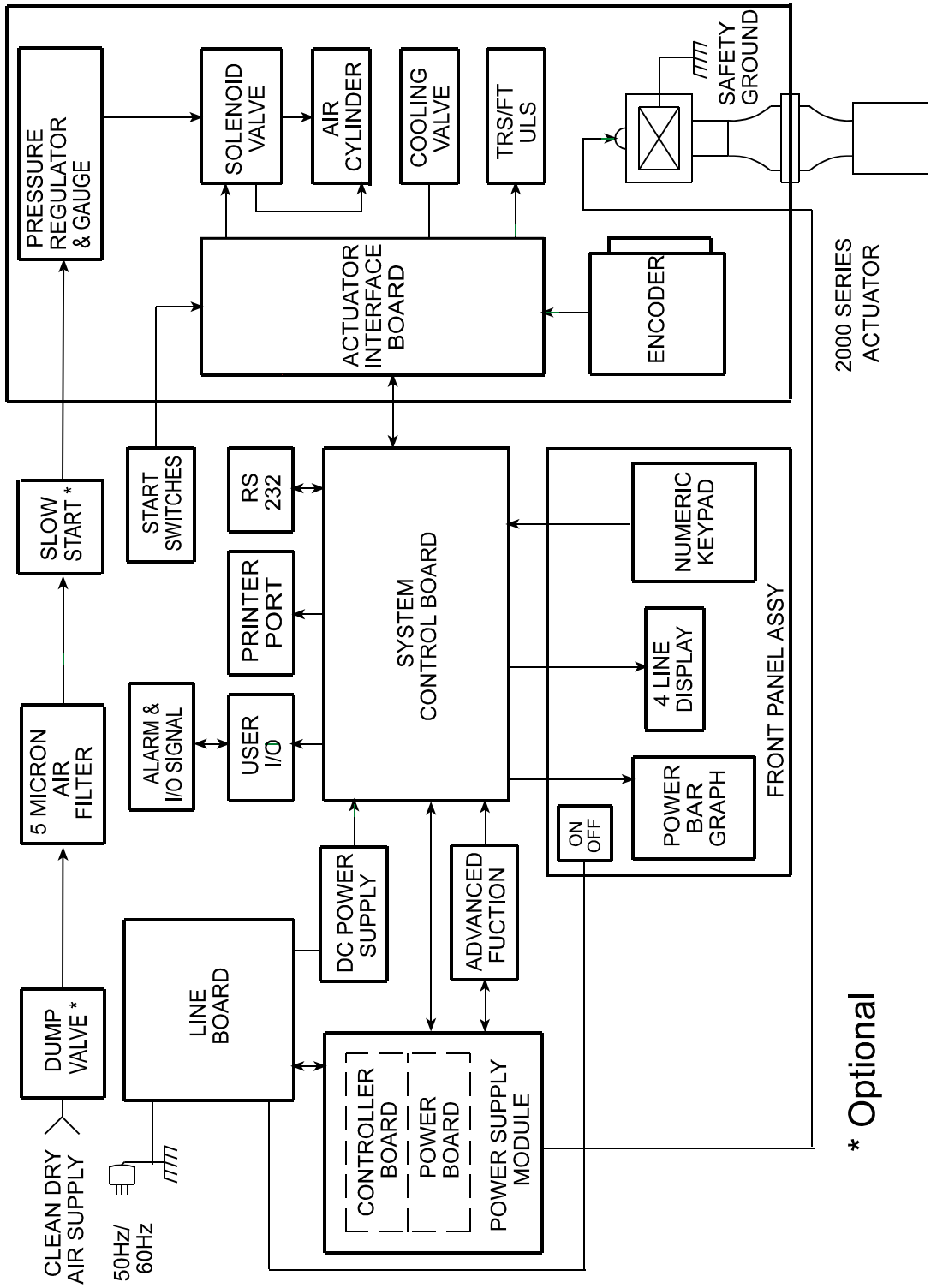
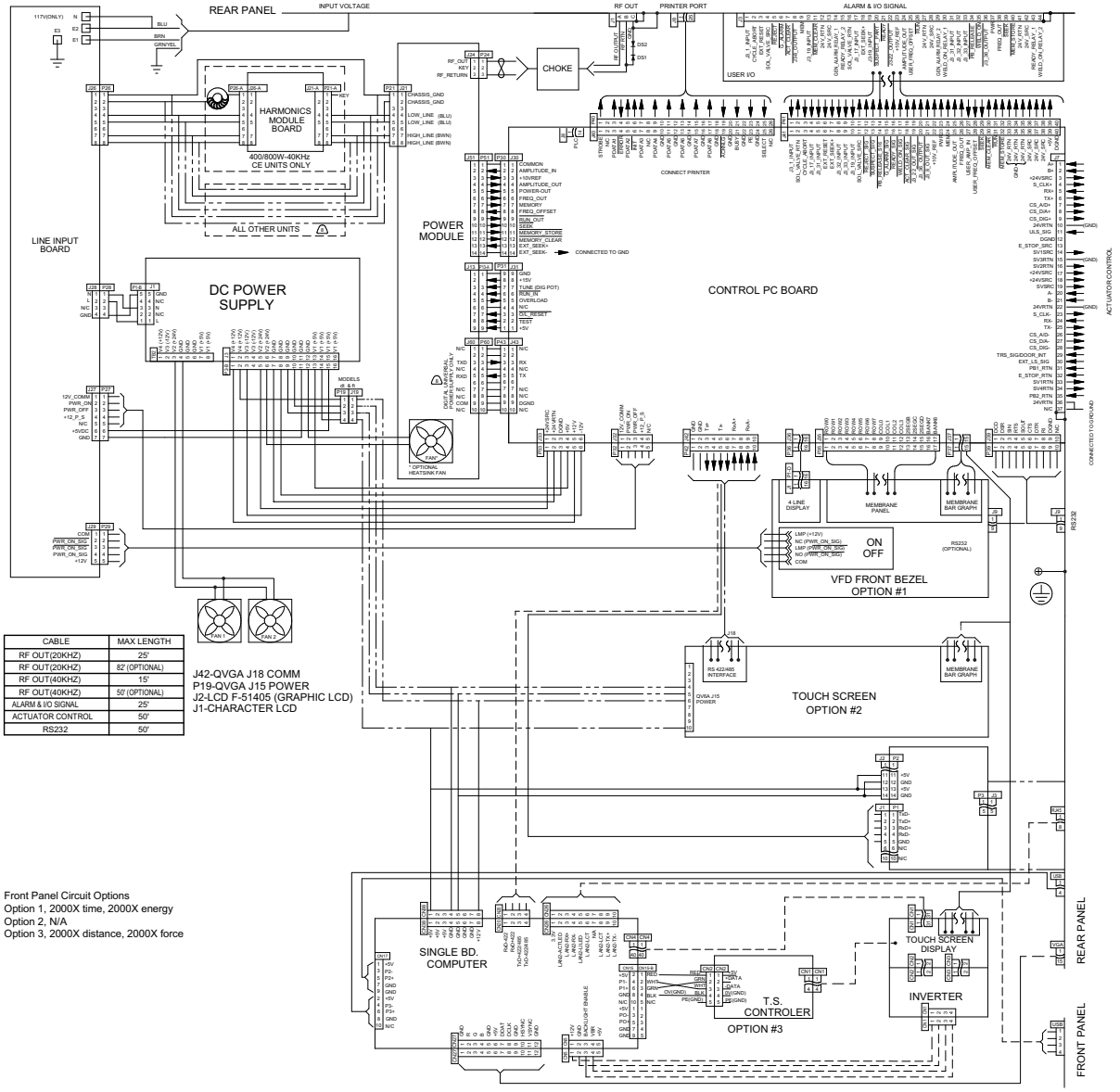


Figure 7.2 Interconnect Diagram, Power Supply



CABLE	MAX LENGTH
RF OUT(20KHZ)	25'
RF OUT(20KHZ)	82' (OPTIONAL)
RF OUT(40KHZ)	15'
RF OUT(40KHZ)	50' (OPTIONAL)
ALARM & I/O SIGNAL	25'
ACTUATOR CONTROL	50'
RS232	50'

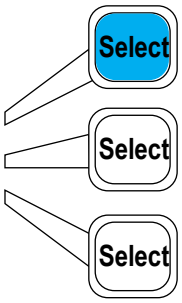
J42-QVGA J18 COMM
P19-QVGA J15 POWER
J2-LCD F-51405 (GRAPHIC LCD)
J1-CHARACTER LCD

Front Panel Circuit Options
Option 1, 2000X time, 2000X energy
Option 2, N/A
Option 3, 2000X distance, 2000X force

7.4 Troubleshooting

When the 2000X Power Supply encounters a situation that is outside of the normal conditions, an alarm is generated. If there is any alarm condition, the Front Panel displays the number of alarms and generates an audible alarm.

Table 7.6 Alarm Message

When you press the **Select** key that corresponds to an Alarm, you will see the actual Display Message. Press the Select Key next to the display message for the corrective action. If no additional information is displayed, refer to the System Alarm tables. To change one or both of the limits shown, press the **Select** key that corresponds to the limit you want to set and use the numeric keypad to set the limit to another value.	RUN:TIME =0.010 **2 ALARMS** Adjust Weld> Weld Results>	

NOTICE	
	If you have been directed to this Section from an alarm message on the Power Supply screen, go directly to the table for the alarm type specified in the message. Location of the alarm tables is detailed in the following text. If your alarm pop up is from the Print menu, run another cycle and try to re-print your graph. These tables do not include Printer alarms.

This section details the alarm conditions that you can encounter while using the 2000X Power Supply. There are eight classes of alarms: **Cycle Modified**, **Failure of**, **No Cycle**, **Setup**, and **Suspect**, **Reject**, **Overload**, and **Note**. Following is a brief description of each type of alarm, followed by Table 7.7 through Table 7.13 which detail alarm messages, causes, and corrective actions for each type of alarm.

- A Cycle Modified alarm (Table 7.7 Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action) occurs when the most recent weld cycle has been modified by some event. For example, if the amplitude step did not occur as requested. The specific alarm that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display or your printer, and will advance the general alarm counter. If you encounter numerous or successive cycle modified alarms, review your weld parameter setup. See individual alarms for advancement of cycle counter
- A Failure of alarms, Equipment Failure, (Table 7.8 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action) are those which might occur for hardware failure, or hardware disconnected. For example, if the door were open to replace a stack, a Door/Trigger Switch alarm would occur. The specific equipment failure that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display or your printer. Repair or replace the equipment before you run another weld cycle. Failure Of: alarms will advance the general alarm counter. Call Branson Product Support at (203) 796-0551 or (203) 796-0355 for more detailed information on repairing your equipment

WARNING	
	You should always power down your system prior to repairing any portion of it.

- A No Cycle alarm (Table 7.9 No Cycle Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action) occurs when the most recent weld cycle was aborted before any weld took place. The specific no weld failure that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display or your printer. No Cycle alarms will advance the general alarm counter, but will not advance the cycle counter. You should continue with the next weld cycle; in most cases the part can be re-used
- A Suspect or Reject alarm (Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action) occurs when the most recent weld cycle fell outside your programmed limits. The specific conflict that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display or your printer. Suspect/Reject alarms will advance the general alarm counter, but only once per cycle regardless of the number of alarms generated. You should inspect any part that was welded during a cycle that resulted in an alarm. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms you should review your weld parameter setup
- A Setup alarm (Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action) occurs when you have entered parameters that create a conflict with other parameters. For example, trying to step an amplitude at weld time 1.000 seconds, but the weld time is only set for 0.500 seconds. The specific conflict that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display or your printer. All setup alarms must be resolved before a new cycle can be run. Setup alarms will advance the general alarm counter, but will not advance the cycle counter. If you are uncertain as to the cause of the conflict, it might be helpful to print out your current setup so that you can see your entire setup, resolve the conflict, and proceed
- An Overload alarm (Table 7.12 Overload Alarms) occurs when your ultrasonic power supply has overloaded. Overload alarms advance the general alarms counter. The specific overload that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display or your printer
- Note alarms (Table 7.13 Note Alarms) occur to alert you that an alarm is imminent or the cycle ran with authorized modifications

7.5 System Alarm Tables

The following tables detail alarms that you can encounter on the 2000X Power Supply, listed alphabetically by the Display Message that is presented on the front panel. The message on the display panel of the Power Supply is shown in the first column. A more detailed message that you can print is shown in the second column. The third and fourth columns indicate the condition that led to the alarm and the corrective action you should take.

7.5.1 Alarm Index

An alphabetical list of the alarms that appear on the system display and on printouts is included in Appendix C: Alarm Index. All alarm page numbers are hyper-linked to the full description, which describes the cause of the alarm condition and the steps to resolve it.

7.5.2 Cycle Modified Alarms

Table 7.7 Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
ABS Cutoff	Absolute Distance Cutoff	The absolute distance cutoff you set was reached. The main parameter you set for the weld cycle was not used to the end of the cycle.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm.
Ground Detect Abort	Ground Detect Abort	The cycle was aborted because ground detect occurred during Weld or Hold	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm.
Ground Detect Abort (Message also appears in "No Cycle Alarms and Messages."	Ground Detect Abort	The cycle was aborted because ground detect occurred during weld or hold.	Verify part placement and distance parameters.
Max Timeout	Max Timeout	The ultrasonics ran for the maximum allowed time because the set parameter could not be achieved.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm.

Table 7.7 Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
No Amplitude Step	Time Value for Amplitude Step not Reached	The amplitude time step trigger was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
ABS Cutoff	Absolute Distance Cutoff	The absolute distance cutoff you set was reached. The main parameter you set for the weld cycle was not used to the end of the cycle.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm.
Ground Detect Abort	Ground Detect Abort	The cycle was aborted because ground detect occurred during Weld or Hold.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm.
Ground Detect Abort (Message also appears in "No Cycle Alarms and Messages."	Ground Detect Abort	The cycle was aborted because ground detect occurred during weld or hold.	Verify part placement and distance parameters.
Max Timeout	Max Timeout	The ultrasonics ran for the maximum allowed time because the set parameter could not be achieved.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm.
No Amplitude Step	Time Value for Amplitude Step not Reached	The amplitude time step trigger was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Amplitude Step	External signal for Amplitude Step did not occur	The amplitude step at external signal input was not received.	Make sure Ext Signal is defined in the User I/O.

Table 7.7 Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
No Amplitude Step	External signal for Amplitude Step did not occur	The amplitude step at external signal input was not received.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Amplitude Step	Power level for Amplitude Step not Reached	The amplitude power step level was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Amplitude Step	Energy Value for Amplitude Step not Reached	The amplitude energy step trigger was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Amplitude Step	Collapse Distance for Amplitude Step not Reached	The amplitude collapse distance step trigger was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Amplitude Step	External signal for Amplitude Step did not occur	The amplitude step at external signal input was not received.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Amplitude Step	Power level for Amplitude Step not Reached	The amplitude power step level was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.

Table 7.7 Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
No Amplitude Step	Energy Value for Amplitude Step not Reached	The amplitude energy step trigger was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Amplitude Step	Collapse Distance for Amplitude Step not Reached	The amplitude collapse distance step trigger was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
Sonics Disabled	Ultrasonics Disabled by user input		Remove Sonics Disable input.
Peak Power Cutoff	Peak Power Cutoff	The peak power cutoff was reached. The main parameter you set for the weld cycle was not used.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm.
Trigger Lost in Hold	Trigger Lost during Hold	The cycle was aborted because trigger force on the part was lost.	Verify that there is adequate pressure from your pneumatic supply.
Peak Power Cutoff	Peak Power Cutoff	The peak power cutoff was reached. The main parameter you set for the weld cycle was not used.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm.
Trigger Lost in Hold	Trigger Lost during Hold	The cycle was aborted because trigger force on the part was lost.	Verify that there is adequate pressure from your pneumatic supply.
Trigger > End Force	Trigger Force is greater than the End Force	The force at the end of the weld is less than the trigger force you set.	Increase your downspeed and/or system pressure. If you very frequently receive this alarm, contact Branson

Table 7.7 Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Trigger Lost in Weld	Trigger Lost during Weld	The cycle was aborted because trigger force on the part was lost.	Verify that there is adequate pressure from your pneumatic supply. Verify stroke length < 3.75”

7.5.3 Failure of Alarms and Messages

Table 7.8 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Actuator Clear Function	Actuator Clear Function Failure	The carriage is home before the Actuator clear condition was met.	Make sure the linear encoder cable is connected properly. Replace Linear Encoder. Repair/replace Control Board.
Actuator Clear Function	Actuator Clear Function Failure	The carriage is home before the Actuator clear condition was met.	Make sure the linear encoder cable is connected properly. Replace Linear Encoder. Repair/replace Control Board.
Actuator Type	The Actuator Type was changed since the last weld cycle	Actuator type detected at power up is different from the actuator type that was used on the last weld cycle. Checked at power up and after E-Stop is removed.	Verify serial number (excepting ae/ao) and type, then reset. If you did not change the actuator, troubleshoot your system.
Actuator NovRam Error Code = 10	Actuator NovRam failed	The Actuator NovRam has corrupted data	Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator.
Actuator NovRam Error Code = 10	Actuator NovRam failed	The Actuator NovRam has corrupted data	Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator.

Table 7.8 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Actuator NovRam Error Code = 20	Actuator NovRam failed	Cylinder size is not 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 50mm, 63mm, 80mm, or Custom.	Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator.
Actuator NovRam Error Code = 30	Actuator NovRam failed	Stroke length is not 4", 5", 6", 7", 8", 80mm, 160mm, or Custom.	Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator.
Actuator NovRam Error Code = 40	Actuator NovRam failed	When each successive element in the Pressure Sensor Calibration Table is not greater than the preceding one.	Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator.
Actuator NovRam Error Code = 50	Actuator NovRam failed	When each successive element in the Load Cell Table is not larger than the preceding one.	Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator.
Actuator NovRam Error Code = 60	Actuator NovRam failed	Could not write to the actuator NovRam.	Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator.
Door/Trigger Switch	Door/Trigger Switch Failure	The actuator door (front cover) is ajar or missing, or the Trigger Switch was not engaged.	Secure the Actuator door or verify the Trigger Switch electrical connections and continuity.
External Switch	External Switch	The external input is either improperly configured, in the wrong condition, or failed.	Reconfigure properly, replace, or set proper condition.
Horn Return Timeout	Horn Return Timeout	The Horn did not retract to the home position after the weld was completed and within the correct time. The Horn might be jammed or air pressure might have failed. The Upper Limit Switch might also have failed.	Verify that air pressure is correct. Check for obstructions or jams that would prevent the Horn from returning. Verify the operation of the Upper Limit Switch.

Table 7.8 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
P/S NovRam	Power Supply NovRam Failed	The power supply NovRam failed. It is checked only at power up.	Repair/replace Control Board.
Preset Data/ BBR	Failure of Preset Data or Battery Backed RAM	Corrupted data in preset. Checked at power up.	Replace BBR or repair/ replace the Control Board. Replace battery.
Pretrigger Timeout	Pretrigger Timeout	Pretrigger has not occurred within 10 seconds of carriage leaving home (of upper limit becoming inactive).	Check the distance setting for pretrigger to be sure the carriage is traveling at least that far. Repair/replace Control Board.
Printer Buffer Full	[No message sent to printer.]	Your printer buffer is full and no more data can be sent to your printer.	Verify that the printer is online and operational and wait until some data has been printed.
Printer Offline	[No message sent to printer.]	Your printer is offline or not connected.	Verify that the printer is online and operational and that connections are maintained.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 100	Recalibrate Actuator	Either the Actuator serial number is different from the last time power was turned on, or your new setup requires a calibration.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu.
Horn Return Timeout	Horn Return Timeout	The Horn did not retract to the home position after the weld was completed and within the correct time. The Horn might be jammed or air pressure might have failed. The Upper Limit Switch might also have failed.	Verify that air pressure is correct. Check for obstructions or jams that would prevent the Horn from returning. Verify the operation of the Upper Limit Switch.
P/S NovRam	Power Supply NovRam Failed	The power supply NovRam failed. It is checked only at power up.	Repair/replace Control Board.

Table 7.8 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Preset Data/ BBR	Failure of Preset Data or Battery Backed RAM	Corrupted data in preset. Checked at power up.	Replace BBR or repair/ replace the Control Board. Replace battery.
Pretrigger Timeout	Pretrigger Timeout	Pretrigger has not occurred within 10 seconds of carriage leaving home (of upper limit becoming inactive).	Check the distance setting for pretrigger to be sure the carriage is traveling at least that far. Repair/replace Control Board.
Printer Buffer Full	[No message sent to printer.]	Your printer buffer is full and no more data can be sent to your printer.	Verify that the printer is online and operational and wait until some data has been printed.
Printer Offline	[No message sent to printer.]	Your printer is offline or not connected.	Verify that the printer is online and operational and that connections are maintained.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 100	Recalibrate Actuator	Either the Actuator serial number is different from the last time power was turned on, or your new setup requires a calibration.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 200	Recalibrate Actuator	A collapse of more than 0.2500” and less than 35 lbs. of force was reached.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. Also check part alignment.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 300	Recalibrate Actuator	A change in horn weight of 6-7 lbs since the last power down or E-stop.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu.

Table 7.8 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 400	Recalibrate Actuator	Carriage travel greater than -0.25 after trigger.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. Check Step Force and Hold Force for large decreased values.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 600	Recalibrate Actuator	Actuator type has changed.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 700	Recalibrate Actuator	In Horn Down, a bad Trigger has occurred.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 800	Recalibrate Actuator	Part contact flag has been lost.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 900	Recalibrate Actuator	Carriage travels greater than 0.250 and less than 35 lbs. force was developed after part contact and before trigger.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. Check Step Force and Hold Force for large increasing values.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 1000	Recalibrate Actuator	Upgrade from version 6.00 aed to version 8.0 has been detected.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu, using maximum stroke length.

Table 7.8 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 1100	Recalibrate Actuator	Upgrade from version 8.06 to 8.04 or 8.05 has been detected.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu.
Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 1200	Recalibrate Actuator	A Reset Act. Cal has been done. The restored value is from an 8.04 or 8.05 calibration.	Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu.
Start Sw Time	Start Switch Stagger Time Missed	You did not activate both start switches within the required time interval.	Activate both start switches at the same time to rerun the cycle.
Start Switch Closed	Start Switch Closed Failure	The start switch(es) are still active two seconds after the carriage is home (ULS is active).	For manual operation: Release the Start Switches when the beep sounds. For automated operation: The PLC (Programmable Logic Controller) should release the start signal when the Weld On signal or Start Switch release signal is active.
Start Sw Time	Start Switch Stagger Time Missed	You did not activate both start switches within the required time interval.	Activate both start switches at the same time to rerun the cycle.
Start Switch Closed	Start Switch Closed Failure	The start switch(es) are still active two seconds after the carriage is home (ULS is active).	For manual operation: Release the Start Switches when the beep sounds. For automated operation: The PLC (Programmable Logic Controller) should release the start signal when the Weld On signal or Start Switch release signal is active.
Start Switches Lost	Start Switches Lost	Checked after both start switches, and before trigger. There is a 10 ms debounce time before considered lost.	Press start switches again.

Table 7.8 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Thermal Overload	Thermal Overload	Thermal sensors on the Power Supply indicate that the temperature is above the maximum operating temperature.	Lower the duty cycle by decreasing the on time or increasing the off time. Ensure fans are operational and internal components are free of dust.
Thermal Overload	Thermal Overload	Thermal sensors on the Power Supply indicate that the temperature is above the maximum operating temperature.	Lower the duty cycle by decreasing the on time or increasing the off time. Ensure fans are operational and internal components are free of dust.
Trigger Switch	Trigger Switch	Trigger Switch Failed. Checked during ready, during test ready and during power up.	The Recal Actuator line and submenu will only appear on AED actuators. Doing a calibration will reset this alarm.
Ultrasonics P/S	Ultrasonics Power Supply Not Present or Failed	Checked during power up. Seek was requested but no run signal detected, or the amplitude from the Power output is less than 2%. A DUPS communication error occurred.	Contact Branson. Repair/ replace the Power Supply Module.
Upper Limit Switch	Upper Limit Switch Failed	Upper Limit Switch was not engaged at the end of weld cycle. The switch might have failed or the electrical wiring might be loose.	Verify the electrical connections for the Upper Limit Switch or replace the switch.
Ultrasonics P/S	Ultrasonics Power Supply Not Present or Failed	Checked during power up. Seek was requested but no run signal detected, or the amplitude from the Power output is less than 2%. A DUPS communication error occurred.	Contact Branson. Repair/ replace the Power Supply Module.

Table 7.8 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Upper Limit Switch	Upper Limit Switch Failed	Upper Limit Switch was not engaged at the end of weld cycle. The switch might have failed or the electrical wiring might be loose.	Verify the electrical connections for the Upper Limit Switch or replace the switch.
USB Memory Full	USB Memory Full	Data was selected to be saved on the USB memory stick, but the memory stick is now full.	Welding will be stopped until corrected. If all data from the weld will not fit, then no data will be written. All data from any given weld cycle must be written on one USB stick.
USB Memory Lost	USB Memory Failure	The USB memory stick has been removed or it is not functional.	Since weld data was configured to be saved on the USB stick, welding must be stopped until either the USB stick is functional or weld data is no longer required to be saved.
Wrong Actuator	Wrong Actuator ae/aed cannot be used with this level control	The Power Supply has detected an Actuator that cannot be used with a Power Supply of this type.	Use the correct Actuator for this Power Supply.
Wrong Actuator	Wrong Actuator ae/aed cannot be used with this level control	The Power Supply has detected an Actuator that cannot be used with a Power Supply of this type.	Use the correct Actuator for this Power Supply.

7.5.4 No Cycle Alarms and Messages

Table 7.9 No Cycle Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Abs Before Trg	Absolute Distance Before Trigger	The absolute distance has been reached before trigger. This alarm in other modes means the absolute cutoff distance has been reached before trigger.	Reset your absolute distance parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu.
Amp Step Before Trg	Amp Step Before Trigger	The amplitude step trigger has been detected within 2 ms of start of weld time.	Reset your amplitude step parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu.
Abs Before Trg	Absolute Distance Before Trigger	The absolute distance has been reached before trigger. This alarm in other modes means the absolute cutoff distance has been reached before trigger.	Reset your absolute distance parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu.
Amp Step Before Trg	Amp Step Before Trigger	The amplitude step trigger has been detected within 2 ms of start of weld time.	Reset your amplitude step parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu.
Trg Delay Timeout	External Trigger Delay Timeout	Ext trigger delay has been turned on, but the assigned input did not go inactive within the 30 seconds allowed.	Check external timing. Activate Ext Trg Delay.
Ground Detect	Ground Detect Cutoff	The ground detect input is either improperly configured, in the wrong condition or failed.	Reconfigure properly, change condition or replace faulty input.
Ground Detect Abort (This message also appears in the Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages.)	Ground Detect Abort	The cycle was aborted because ground detect occurred before trigger.	Verify part placement and distance parameters.

Table 7.9 No Cycle Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Missing Part Abort	Missing Part Abort	Checked during downstroke. The missing part minimum distance has not been reached before trigger occurred or the maximum distance has been exceeded before trigger occurred.	Insert a part into the fixture. Use the horn down feature to determine the distance to the part, and reset the minimum and maximum settings as necessary through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trig Before Pretrig	Trigger Before Pretrigger	The cycle was aborted because the trigger force was reached before the pretrigger distance.	Reset your pretrigger distance in the setup menu.
Missing Part Abort	Missing Part Abort	Checked during downstroke. The missing part minimum distance has not been reached before trigger occurred or the maximum distance has been exceeded before trigger occurred.	Insert a part into the fixture. Use the horn down feature to determine the distance to the part, and reset the minimum and maximum settings as necessary through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trig Before Pretrig	Trigger Before Pretrigger	The cycle was aborted because the trigger force was reached before the pretrigger distance.	Reset your pretrigger distance in the setup menu.
Trig Before Pretrig	Trg before Pretrg	Trigger has occurred before pre-trigger distance, upper limit switch is inactive, or pre-trigger time delay has not timed out.	Check each condition and correct where necessary.
Trigger Timeout	Trigger Timeout	Trigger force was not achieved within the 10 second allowed time.	Verify that the part is in the fixture; verify that there is adequate pressure from your pneumatic supply. Verify stroke length <3.75”

Table 7.9 No Cycle Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Trigger Timeout	Trigger Timeout	Trigger force was not achieved within the 10 second allowed time.	Verify that the part is in the fixture; verify that there is adequate pressure from your pneumatic supply. Verify stroke length <3.75”
Abs Before Trg	Absolute Distance Before Trigger	The absolute distance has been reached before trigger. This alarm in other modes means the absolute cutoff distance has been reached before trigger.	Reset your absolute distance parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu.
Amp Step Before Trg	Amp Step Before Trigger	The amplitude step trigger has been detected within 2 ms of start of weld time.	Reset your amplitude step parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu.
Abs Before Trg	Absolute Distance Before Trigger	The absolute distance has been reached before trigger. This alarm in other modes means the absolute cutoff distance has been reached before trigger.	Reset your absolute distance parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu.
Amp Step Before Trg	Amp Step Before Trigger	The amplitude step trigger has been detected within 2 ms of start of weld time.	Reset your amplitude step parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu.

7.5.5 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
+ R Col Dist Limit	+ Reject Collapse Distance Limit.	The collapse distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject collapse distance limits.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
+ S Col Dist Limit	+ Suspect Collapse Distance Limit.	The collapse distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect collapse distance limits.
+ S Trg Dist Limit	+ Suspect Trigger Distance Limit	The trigger distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect trigger distance limits.
+R Abs Dist Limit	+Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The actual distance value exceeded the plus reject absolute distance limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Absolute settings.
+R Energy Limit	+Reject Energy Limit	The actual energy value exceeded the plus reject energy limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Energy settings.
+R Weld Force Limit	+Reject Weld Force Limit	The actual Weld Force exceeded the plus Reject Weld Force limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Weld Force settings.
+R Pk Power Limit	+Reject Peak Power Limit	The actual peak power value exceeded the plus reject peak power limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Peak Power settings.
+R Time Limit	+Reject Time Limit	The actual time value exceeded the plus reject time limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Time settings or your reject time limits.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
+R Trg Dist Limit	+Reject Trigger Distance Limit	The actual trigger distance value exceeded the plus reject trigger distance limit.	Adjust + reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms.
+R Weld Force Limit	+Reject Weld Force Limit	Actual Weld Force did not reach minus reject Weld Force limit.	Adjust +reject weld force through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms.
+S Abs Dist Limit	+Suspect Absolute Distance Limit	The actual absolute distance value did not reach the plus suspect absolute distance limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust +suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Col Dist Limit	+Suspect Collapse Distance Limit	The actual collapse distance value exceeded the plus suspect collapse distance limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the collapse distance value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Energy Limit	+Suspect Energy Limit	The actual energy value exceeded the plus suspect energy limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Energy value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Weld Force Limit	+Suspect Weld Force Limit	The actual Weld Force exceeded the plus suspect Weld Force limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Weld Force value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
+S Pk Power Limit	+Suspect Peak Power Limit	The actual peak power value exceeded the plus suspect peak power limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Peak Power value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Time Limit	+Suspect Time Limit	The actual time value exceeded the plus suspect time limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Time value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu or change suspect time limits.
+S Trg Dist Limit	+Suspect Trigger Distance Limit	The actual trigger distance value exceeded the plus suspect trigger distance limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Trigger Distance Limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+R Abs Dist Limit	+ Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject absolute distance limit.
+R Abs Dist Limit	+ Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject absolute distance limit.
+S Abs Dist Limit	+ Suspect Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect absolute distance limits.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
- R Abs Dist Limit	- Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject absolute distance limit.
- S Abs Dist Limit	- Suspect Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect absolute distance limits.
+R Energy Limit	+ Reject Energy Limit	The energy used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject energy limits.
+S Energy Limit	+ Suspect Energy Limit	The energy used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect energy limits.
Energy Not Reached	Energy Not Reached	The weld time has been extended up to 50% and the minimum energy has still not been reached.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your minimum energy setting.
- R Energy Limit	- Reject Energy Limit	The energy used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject energy limits.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
- S Energy Limit	- Suspect Energy Limit	The energy used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect energy limits.
+ R Pk Power Limit	+ Reject Peak Power Limit	The peak power used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject peak power limits.
+S Pk Power Limit	+ Suspect Peak Power Limit	The peak power used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect peak power limits.
- R Pk Power Limit	- Reject Peak Power Limit	The peak power used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject peak power limits.
- S Pk Power Limit	- Suspect Peak Power Limit	The peak power used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect peak power limits.
- R Abs Dist Limit	- Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The actual distance value did not reach the minus reject absolute distance limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Absolute settings.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
- R Col Dist Limit	- Reject Collapse Distance Limit	The collapse distance used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject collapse distance limits.
+ R Col Dist Limit	+ Reject Collapse Distance Limit.	The collapse distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject collapse distance limits.
+ S Col Dist Limit	+ Suspect Collapse Distance Limit.	The collapse distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect collapse distance limits.
+ S Trg Dist Limit	+ Suspect Trigger Distance Limit	The trigger distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect trigger distance limits.
+R Abs Dist Limit	+Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The actual distance value exceeded the plus reject absolute distance limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Absolute settings.
+R Energy Limit	+Reject Energy Limit	The actual energy value exceeded the plus reject energy limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Energy settings.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
+R Weld Force Limit	+Reject Weld Force Limit	The actual Weld Force exceeded the plus Reject Weld Force limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Weld Force settings.
+R Pk Power Limit	+Reject Peak Power Limit	The actual peak power value exceeded the plus reject peak power limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Peak Power settings.
+R Time Limit	+Reject Time Limit	The actual time value exceeded the plus reject time limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Time settings or your reject time limits.
+R Trg Dist Limit	+Reject Trigger Distance Limit	The actual trigger distance value exceeded the plus reject trigger distance limit.	Adjust + reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms.
+R Weld Force Limit	+Reject Weld Force Limit	Actual Weld Force did not reach minus reject Weld Force limit.	Adjust +reject weld force through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms.
+S Abs Dist Limit	+Suspect Absolute Distance Limit	The actual absolute distance value did not reach the plus suspect absolute distance limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust +suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
+S Col Dist Limit	+Suspect Collapse Distance Limit	The actual collapse distance value exceeded the plus suspect collapse distance limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the collapse distance value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Energy Limit	+Suspect Energy Limit	The actual energy value exceeded the plus suspect energy limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Energy value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Weld Force Limit	+Suspect Weld Force Limit	The actual Weld Force exceeded the plus suspect Weld Force limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Weld Force value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Pk Power Limit	+Suspect Peak Power Limit	The actual peak power value exceeded the plus suspect peak power limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Peak Power value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Time Limit	+Suspect Time Limit	The actual time value exceeded the plus suspect time limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Time value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu or change suspect time limits.
+S Trg Dist Limit	+Suspect Trigger Distance Limit	The actual trigger distance value exceeded the plus suspect trigger distance limit.	Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Trigger Distance Limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
+R Abs Dist Limit	+ Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject absolute distance limit.
+R Abs Dist Limit	+ Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject absolute distance limit.
+S Abs Dist Limit	+ Suspect Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect absolute distance limits.
- R Abs Dist Limit	- Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject absolute distance limit.
- S Abs Dist Limit	- Suspect Absolute Distance Limit	The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect absolute distance limits.
+R Energy Limit	+ Reject Energy Limit	The energy used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject energy limits.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
+S Energy Limit	+ Suspect Energy Limit	The energy used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect energy limits.
Energy Not Reached	Energy Not Reached	The weld time has been extended up to 50% and the minimum energy has still not been reached.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your minimum energy setting.
- R Energy Limit	- Reject Energy Limit	The energy used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject energy limits.
- S Energy Limit	- Suspect Energy Limit	The energy used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect energy limits.
+ R Pk Power Limit	+ Reject Peak Power Limit	The peak power used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject peak power limits.
+S Pk Power Limit	+ Suspect Peak Power Limit	The peak power used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect peak power limits.
- R Pk Power Limit	- Reject Peak Power Limit	The peak power used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject peak power limits.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
- S Pk Power Limit	- Suspect Peak Power Limit	The peak power used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set.	Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect peak power limits.
- R Abs Dist Limit	- Reject Absolute Distance Limit	The actual distance value did not reach the minus reject absolute distance limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Absolute settings.
- R Col Dist Limit	- Reject Collapse Distance Limit	The collapse distance used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set.	Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject collapse distance limits.
-R Freq Limit	-R Freq Limit	The system Bandwidth Limit (SBL) function has determined the frequency has dropped too much and is now close to the series resonant point.	Verify integrity of stack. Review application.
+R Freq Limit	+R Freq Limit	The system Bandwidth Limit (SBL) function has determined the frequency has risen too much and is now close to the series resonant point.	Verify integrity of stack. Review application.
-R PMC Band Limit	-R PMC Band Limit	The Power Match Curve function has detected points below the acceptable curve.	Run additional cycles to determine if this is a trend or an anomaly. Examine process and adjust accordingly.
+R PMC Band Limit	+R PMC Band Limit	The Power Match Curve function has detected points above the acceptable curve.	Run additional cycles to determine if this is a trend or an anomaly. Examine process and adjust accordingly.

Table 7.10 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
- R Weld Force Limit	- Reject Weld Force Limit	The actual Weld Force did not reach the minus reject Weld Force limit.	Adjust - reject weld force through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms.
- R Time Limit	- Reject Time Limit	The actual time value did not reach the minus reject time limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Time settings.
- R Weld Force Limit	- Reject Weld Force Limit	The actual Weld Force did not reach the minus reject Weld Force limit.	Adjust - reject weld force through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms.
- R Time Limit	- Reject Time Limit	The actual time value did not reach the minus reject time limit.	Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Time settings.

7.5.6 Setup Alarms and Messages

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Amp Step Conflict	The distance you have set for the amplitude to step is equal to or greater than the absolute distance you have set.	Change the step distance for the amplitude and/or the absolute distance settings.
Amp Step Conflict	The energy level you have set for the amplitude to step is in conflict with the energy level you have set for the weld cycle.	Change the step energy for the amplitude and/or the energy level for the weld cycle.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Amp Step Conflict	The time that you have set for the amplitude to step is greater than the time that you have set for the weld cycle.	Change the step time for the amplitude and/or the time setting for the weld cycle.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus reject peak power limit value.	Change the amplitude step or +reject peak power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus suspect peak power limit.	Change the amplitude step or +suspect peak power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus reject energy limit.	Change the amplitude step or +reject energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus suspect energy limit.	Change the amplitude step or +suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at power value is equal to or greater than the peak power value. This alarm is for peak power mode only.	Change the amplitude step or peak power main parameter through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at energy value is equal to or greater than the max energy compensation value.	Change the amplitude step or maximum energy compensation limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value. This alarm is in all modes but peak power.	Change the amplitude step or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at time value is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value. This occurs in all modes except time.	Change the amplitude step at time value and/or the maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The minus reject power limit is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value.	Change the - reject power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Cutoff Conflict	The plus reject power limit is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value.	Change the +reject power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The minus suspect power limit is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value.	Change the - suspect power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The plus suspect power limit is equal to or less than the peak power cutoff value.	Change the +suspect power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The plus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only.	Change the +Reject energy limit or minimum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The plus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only.	Change the +Suspect energy limit or minimum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The minus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the maximum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only.	Change the - Reject energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The minus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the maximum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only.	Change the - Suspect energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The minus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value.	Change the - Reject energy limit or minimum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The minus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value.	Change the - Suspect energy limit or energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The plus energy reject limit is equal to or greater than the energy compensation maximum value	Change the +Reject energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Energy Comp Conflict	The plus suspect energy limit is equal to or greater than the energy compensation maximum value.	Change the +Suspect energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Crossed	The energy minimum and maximum settings are crossed. This alarm is only valid when energy compensation is on.	Change the minimum and maximum energy compensation limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+- Eng Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for energy that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect energy limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+- Eng Limit Crossed	The reject limits for energy that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject energy limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Eng S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect energy limit.	Change the +reject energy limit or - suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Eng S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the minus reject energy limit.	Change the +suspect energy limit or - reject energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Eng S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect energy limit.	Change the +reject energy limit or +suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Eng S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject energy limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect energy limit.	Change the - reject energy limit or - suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The distance you have set for the amplitude to step is equal to or greater than the absolute distance you have set.	Change the step distance for the amplitude and/or the absolute distance settings.
Amp Step Conflict	The energy level you have set for the amplitude to step is in conflict with the energy level you have set for the weld cycle.	Change the step energy for the amplitude and/or the energy level for the weld cycle.
Amp Step Conflict	The time that you have set for the amplitude to step is greater than the time that you have set for the weld cycle.	Change the step time for the amplitude and/or the time setting for the weld cycle.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus reject peak power limit value.	Change the amplitude step or +reject peak power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus suspect peak power limit.	Change the amplitude step or +suspect peak power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus reject energy limit.	Change the amplitude step or +reject energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus suspect energy limit.	Change the amplitude step or +suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at power value is equal to or greater than the peak power value. This alarm is for peak power mode only.	Change the amplitude step or peak power main parameter through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at energy value is equal to or greater than the max energy compensation value.	Change the amplitude step or maximum energy compensation limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value. This alarm is in all modes but peak power.	Change the amplitude step or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at time value is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value. This occurs in all modes except time.	Change the amplitude step at time value and/or the maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The minus reject power limit is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value.	Change the - reject power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The plus reject power limit is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value.	Change the +reject power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Cutoff Conflict	The minus suspect power limit is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value.	Change the - suspect power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The plus suspect power limit is equal to or less than the peak power cutoff value.	Change the +suspect power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The plus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only.	Change the +Reject energy limit or minimum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The plus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only.	Change the +Suspect energy limit or minimum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The minus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the maximum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only.	Change the - Reject energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The minus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the maximum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only.	Change the - Suspect energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The minus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value.	Change the - Reject energy limit or minimum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The minus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value.	Change the - Suspect energy limit or energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Conflict	The plus energy reject limit is equal to or greater than the energy compensation maximum value	Change the +Reject energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Energy Comp Conflict	The plus suspect energy limit is equal to or greater than the energy compensation maximum value.	Change the +Suspect energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Energy Comp Crossed	The energy minimum and maximum settings are crossed. This alarm is only valid when energy compensation is on.	Change the minimum and maximum energy compensation limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+- Eng Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for energy that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect energy limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+- Eng Limit Crossed	The reject limits for energy that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject energy limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Eng S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect energy limit.	Change the +reject energy limit or - suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Eng S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the minus reject energy limit.	Change the +suspect energy limit or - reject energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Eng S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect energy limit.	Change the +reject energy limit or +suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Eng S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject energy limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect energy limit.	Change the - reject energy limit or - suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Force A > Pressure	A force value was selected while the set pressure was 80 psi, then the set pressure was reduced to 60 psi.	A new force value must be entered.
Force B> Pressure	The force value was selected while the set pressure was 80 psi, then the set pressure was changed to 60 psi.	The force value must be re-entered.
Force/Lmt Conflict	Weld force is equal to or greater than the plus reject weld force limit. This alarm can only occur if force stepping is off.	Either raise the reject limit or lower the weld force.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Force/Lmt Conflict	Weld force is equal to or greater than the plus suspect weld force limit. This alarm can only occur if force stepping is off.	Either raise the suspect limit or lower the weld force.
Force/Lmt Conflict	Weld force is equal to or less than the minus reject weld force limit. This alarm can only occur if force stepping is off.	Either raise the reject limit or lower the weld force.
Force/Lmt Conflict	Weld force is equal to or less than the minus suspect weld force limit. This alarm can only occur if force stepping is off.	Either raise the suspect limit or lower the weld force.
Force/Lmt Conflict	Force B is equal to or greater than the plus reject weld force limit. This alarm can only occur if force stepping is on.	Either raise the reject limit or lower the force B setting.
Force/Lmt Conflict	Force B is equal to or greater than the plus suspect weld force limit. This alarm can only occur if force stepping is on.	Either raise the suspect limit or lower the force B settings.
Force/Lmt Conflict	Force B is equal to or less than the minus reject weld force limit. This alarm can only occur if force stepping is on.	Either lower the reject limit or raise force B setting.
Force/Lmt Conflict	Force B is equal to or less than the minus suspect weld force limit. This alarm can only occur if force stepping is on.	Either lower the suspect limit or raise the force B setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at power is equal to or greater than the plus reject peak power limit. This alarm cannot occur in peak power welding mode.	Either raise the reject limit or lower the step at power setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at power is equal to or greater than the plus suspect peak power limit. This alarm cannot occur in peak power welding mode.	Either raise the suspect limit or lower the step at power setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at energy is equal to or greater than the plus reject energy limit. This alarm cannot occur in energy welding mode.	Either raise the reject limit or lower the step at energy setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at energy is equal to or greater than the plus suspect energy limit. This alarm cannot occur in energy welding mode.	Either raise the suspect limit or lower the step at energy setting.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Force Step Conflict	The force step at distance is equal to or less than the minus reject collapse limit. This alarm cannot occur in collapse welding mode.	Either lower reject limit or raise the step at distance setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at distance is equal to or less than the minus suspect collapse limit. This alarm cannot occur in collapse welding mode.	Either lower the suspect limit or raise the step at distance setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at energy is equal to or greater than the plus suspect energy limit. This alarm cannot occur in energy welding mode.	Either raise the suspect limit or the step at energy setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at collapse distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject collapse limit. This alarm cannot occur in collapse welding mode.	Either raise the reject limit or lower the step at collapse setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect collapse limit. This alarm cannot occur in collapse welding mode.	Either raise the suspect limit or lower the step at distance setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at peak power is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value. This alarm can occur in all modes except peak power.	Either raise the peak power cutoff or lower the step at power setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at peak power is equal to or greater than the peak power setting. This alarm cannot occur in peak power mode only.	Either raise the peak power setting or lower the step at peak power setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at energy is equal to or greater than the energy setting. This alarm cannot occur in energy mode only.	Either raise the energy setting or lower the step at energy value.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at energy is equal to or greater than the maximum energy compensation setting. This alarm will occur in time mode with the energy compensation on only.	Either raise max energy compensation or lower the step at energy setting.
Force Step Conflict	The force step at time is equal to or greater than the maximum weld time. This alarm can occur in all weld modes except time.	Either increase the max weld time or lower the step at time setting.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Force Step Cutoff	The collapse cutoff distance is equal to or less than the step at collapse distance. This alarm can occur in all welding modes except collapse.	Either decrease the step at collapse distance or increase the collapse cutoff distance.
Hold Force > Pressure	The hold force was entered when the set pressure was 80 psi. The pressure was then reduced to 60 psi. Therefor this force can no longer be reached.	Re-enter the hold force value or go into horndown and increase the pressure to 80 psi.
No Force Step	The force step at time value was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn force stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Force Step	The force step at energy value was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn force stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Force Step	The force step at power was not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn force stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Force Step	The force step at external signal input not received.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn force stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
No Force Step	The collapse distance required for the force step not reached.	Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn force stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter.
Preset Not Available	Preset is recalled via external inputs and the preset is not defined or is not allowed for the control level.	Check control level availability for preset. Preset is not defined. Make sure presets do not exceed 16.
Pressure > Weld Force	The weld force a cannot be reached because the set pressure is too high.	

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
+ - Pwr Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for power that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect power limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Pwr Limit Crossed	The reject limits for power that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject power limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pwr S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject power limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect power limit.	Change the +reject power limit or - suspect power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pwr S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject power limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect power limit.	Change the +reject power limit or +suspect power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pwr S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect power limit is equal to or less than the minus reject power limit.	Change the +suspect power limit or - reject power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pwr S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject power limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect power limit.	Change the - reject power limit or - suspect power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Pwr Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for power that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect power limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Pwr Limit Crossed	The reject limits for power that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject power limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pwr S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject power limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect power limit.	Change the +reject power limit or - suspect power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pwr S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject power limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect power limit.	Change the +reject power limit or +suspect power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pwr S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect power limit is equal to or less than the minus reject power limit.	Change the +suspect power limit or - reject power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Pwr S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject power limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect power limit.	Change the - reject power limit or - suspect power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the minus reject absolute limit.	Either increase the reject distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance.
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute limit.	Either increase the suspect distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance.
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute limit.	Either increase the reject distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Either increase the suspect distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance.
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject trigger limit.	Either increase the reject distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance.
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect trigger limit.	Either increase the suspect distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance.
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the minus reject trigger limit.	Either increase the reject distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance.
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect trigger limit.	Either increase the suspect distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance.
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance cutoff. This alarm can occur in all weld modes except absolute.	Either increase the absolute cutoff distance or decrease the rapid traverse distance.
Rapid Trav. Conflict	The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance. This alarm can occur only in the absolute welding mode.	Either increase the absolute cutoff distance or decrease the rapid traverse distance.
Sync Setup	The sync input pin and the sync output pin are not both defined.	Define missing sync pin.
Ext Signal	Ext Start requires both an input pin and an output pin to function. One of the pins is not defined.	Define both and input and an output pin for the SV Interlock.
Sync Setup	The sync input pin and the sync output pin are not both defined.	Define missing sync pin.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Sys. Pres. Incorrect	The system pressure is out of tolerance (+/-3 PSI). The pressure is read only after five seconds of idle time while in ready. This alarm does not remove the ready signal because that would prevent entry into horn down. Horndown is the only place where the pressure can be viewed for adjustment.	Go to horndown and adjust the system pressure to either 60 psi (+/- 3 psi) or 80 psi (+/- 3 psi).
+ - Time Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for time that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect time limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Time Limit Crossed	The reject limits for time that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject time limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Time S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject time limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect time limit.	Change the +reject time limit or - suspect time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Time S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect time is equal to or less than the minus reject time limit.	Change the +suspect time limit or - reject time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Time S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject time limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect time limit.	Change the +reject time limit or +suspect time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Time S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject time limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect time limit.	Change the - reject time limit or - suspect time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Timeout Conflict	The plus reject time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value.	Change the +reject time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Timeout Conflict	The minus reject time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value.	Change the - reject time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Timeout Conflict	The plus suspect time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value.	Change the +suspect time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Timeout Conflict	The minus suspect time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value.	Change the +suspect time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Time Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for time that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect time limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Time Limit Crossed	The reject limits for time that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject time limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Time S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject time limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect time limit.	Change the +reject time limit or - suspect time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Time S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect time is equal to or less than the minus reject time limit.	Change the +suspect time limit or - reject time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Time S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject time limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect time limit.	Change the +reject time limit or +suspect time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Time S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject time limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect time limit.	Change the - reject time limit or - suspect time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Timeout Conflict	The plus reject time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value.	Change the +reject time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Timeout Conflict	The minus reject time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value.	Change the - reject time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Timeout Conflict	The plus suspect time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value.	Change the +suspect time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Timeout Conflict	The minus suspect time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value.	Change the +suspect time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Trigger Delay Conflict	External trigger delay has been enabled in weld setup, but no input pin has been defined.	Assign pin in System Configuration Menu.
Trigger Delay Conflict	External trigger delay and pretrigger are both on.	Turn one off.
Weld Force > pressure	The weld force was entered when the system pressure was 80 psi. The system pressure has been reduced to 60 psi and the requested force cannot be reached.	Re-enter the weld force value or go into horndown and increase the pressure to 80 psi.
Invalid Preset Error Code = 1	Features have been selected that are not valid for this control level. Includes things that could have been selected through host mode or selected by installing a BBR from a higher control level machine. Specific to Error code 1: MPS.	Currently, MPS is not available.
Invalid Preset Error Code = 2	Refer to text in first Invalid Preset entry. Specific to Error code 2: Amplitude stepping on Control Level 1 or 2.	Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed.
Invalid Preset Error Code = 3	Refer to text in first Invalid Preset entry. Specific to Error code 3: Force stepping on Control Level 1, 2, 3 or 4.	Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed.
Invalid Preset Error Code = 4	Refer to text in first Invalid Preset entry. Specific to Error code 4: Using a weld mode not valid for Control Level.	Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed.
Invalid Preset Error Code = 5	Refer to text in first Invalid Preset entry. Specific to Error code 5: Invalid distance.	Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed.
Invalid Preset Error Code = 6	Refer to text in first Invalid Preset entry. Specific to Error code 6: Invalid force.	Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed.
Invalid Preset Error Code = 7	Refer to text in first Invalid Preset entry. Specific to Error code 7: Version incorrect.	Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed.
Invalid Preset Error Code = 8	Refer to text in first Invalid Preset entry. Specific to Error code 8: Control level or actuator incorrect.	Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Invalid Preset Error Code = 9	Refer to text in first Invalid Preset entry. Specific to Error code 9: No association of DUPS preset to the current COP preset.	Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed.
Abs Cutoff Conflict	The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the minus reject absolute limit.	Change the absolute cutoff distance or - reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs Cutoff Conflict	The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the minus reject trigger limit.	Change the absolute cutoff distance or - reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs Cutoff Conflict	The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the minus suspect absolute limit.	Change the absolute cutoff distance or - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs Cutoff Conflict	The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the minus suspect trigger limit.	Change the absolute cutoff distance or - suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs Cutoff Conflict	The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the plus reject absolute limit.	Change the absolute cutoff distance or +reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs Cutoff Conflict	The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the plus reject trigger limit.	Change the absolute cutoff distance or +reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs Cutoff Conflict	The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Change the absolute cutoff distance or +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs Cutoff Conflict	The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the plus suspect trigger limit.	Change the absolute cutoff distance or +suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
+ - Abs Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for absolute distance that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect absolute distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Abs Limit Crossed	The reject limits for absolute distance that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject absolute distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject absolute distance limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect absolute distance limit.	Change the +reject absolute distance or - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect absolute distance limit is equal to or less than the minus reject absolute distance limit.	Change the +suspect absolute distance or - reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject absolute distance limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute distance limit.	Change the - reject absolute distance limit or the - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Abs S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject absolute distance limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect absolute distance limit.	Change the +reject absolute distance or +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at collapse value is equal to or greater than the plus reject collapse limit.	Change the amplitude step or +reject collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at collapse value is equal to or greater than the plus suspect collapse limit.	Change the amplitude step or +suspect collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at collapse value is equal to or greater than collapse cutoff.	Change the amplitude step or collapse cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Amp Step Conflict	The amplitude step at collapse distance is equal to or greater than the collapse distance.	Change the amplitude step or collapse distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
+ - Col Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for collapse distance that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect collapse distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Col Limit Crossed	The reject limits for collapse distance that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject collapse distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu
Col S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject collapse distance limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect collapse distance limit.	Change the +reject collapse distance limit or - suspect collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Col S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect collapse distance limit is equal to or less than the minus reject collapse distance limit.	Change the +suspect collapse distance limit or - reject collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Col S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject collapse distance limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect collapse distance limit.	Change the +reject collapse distance limit or +suspect collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Col S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject collapse distance limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect collapse distance limit.	Change the -reject collapse distance limit or - suspect collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The minus reject collapse limit is equal to or greater than the collapse cutoff value.	Change the -reject collapse limit or collapse cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The minus suspect collapse limit is equal to or greater than the collapse cutoff value.	Change the -suspect collapse limit or collapse cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The minus reject absolute limit is equal to or greater than the absolute cutoff value.	Change the -Reject absolute limit or absolute cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Cutoff Conflict	The minus suspect absolute limit is equal to or greater than the absolute cutoff value.	Change the -Suspect absolute limit or absolute cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
+ - F Limit Crossed	The minus reject weld force limit is equal to or greater than the plus reject weld force limit.	Change the -reject weld force limit and/or the +reject weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - F Limit Crossed	The minus suspect force limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect force limit.	Change the -suspect weld force limit and/or the +suspect weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - F Limit Crossed	The + reject freq limit and - reject freq limit values are crossed.	Either make the correction or run a horn scan to automatically correct. This alarm is valid for VGA only.
F S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject force limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect force limit.	Change the +reject force limit and/or the -suspect force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
F S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect force limit is equal to or less than the minus reject force limit.	Change the +suspect force limit and/or the -reject force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
F S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject force limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect force limit.	Change the +reject force limit and/or the +suspect force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
F S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject force limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect force limit.	Change the -reject force limit and/or the - suspect force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Min Trigger Conflict	The trigger force is set below the minimum allowable value.	Minimum trigger force is changed after the trigger force has been set, or if downloaded via host command.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part minimum is equal to or greater than the missing part maximum setting.	Change the missing part minimum and/or the missing part maximum setting through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the minus reject absolute limit.	Change the missing part maximum distance and/or the - reject absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the minus reject absolute limit.	Change the missing part minimum limit or - reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the minus reject trigger limit.	Change the missing part minimum limit or - reject trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the minus reject trigger limit.	Change the missing part maximum distance or - reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the plus reject trigger limit.	Change the missing part maximum distance or +reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute limit.	Change the missing part minimum distance limit or - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the minus suspect trigger limit.	Change the missing part maximum distance limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect trigger limit.	Change the missing part minimum distance limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute limit.	Change the missing part maximum distance limit or +reject absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute limit.	Change the missing part minimum distance limit or +reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part minimum distance is equal to or less than the plus reject trigger limit.	Change the missing part minimum distance limit or +reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Change the missing part maximum distance limit or +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Change the missing part minimum distance limit or +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the plus suspect trigger limit.	Change the missing part maximum distance limit or +suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect trigger limit.	Change the missing part minimum distance limit or +suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance cutoff	Change the missing part minimum distance limit or absolute cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance cutoff.	Change the missing part maximum distance limit or absolute cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance setting. This alarm occurs in absolute mode only.	Change the missing part minimum distance limit or absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Missing Part Conflict	The missing part maximum distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance setting. This alarm occurs in absolute mode only.	Change the missing part maximum distance limit or absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu
Preset Conflict	Both the external selection of presets and sequencing are turned on.	Turn off one of these.
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the minus reject absolute limit.	Change the pretrigger distance or - reject absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute limit.	Change the pretrigger distance or - suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute limit.	Change the pretrigger distance or +reject absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit	Change the pretrigger distance or +suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject trigger limit.	Change the pretrigger distance or +reject trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect trigger limit.	Change the pretrigger distance or +suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the minus reject trigger limit.	Change the pretrigger distance or - reject trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect trigger limit.	Change the pretrigger distance or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the absolute cutoff distance	Change the pretrigger distance or absolute cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Pretrigger Conflict	The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance.	Change the pretrigger distance or absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
- R Trg > - R Abs	The minus reject trigger limit is equal to or greater than the minus reject absolute limit.	Change the - reject trigger limit and/or the - reject absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+R Trg > +R Abs	The plus reject trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute distance limit.	Change the +reject trigger limit and/or the +reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg > Weld Force	The requested trigger force is equal to or greater than the requested weld force.	Either increase the weld force setting or decrease the trigger force setting.
- R Trg > Abs	The minus reject trigger limit is greater than or equal to the absolute distance.	Change the - reject trigger limit and/or the absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
- R Trg > +S Abs	The minus reject trigger limit is greater than or equal to the plus suspect absolute distance limit.	Change the - reject trigger limit and/or the +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
- R Trg > +R Abs	The minus reject trigger limit is greater than or equal to the plus reject absolute distance limit.	Change the - reject trigger limit and/or the +reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Sequence Empty	Preset sequencing is enabled and a start signal has been received, but there is o sequence defined.	Define sequence.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
- S Trg > Abs	The minus suspect trigger limit is greater than or equal to the absolute distance.	Change the - suspect trigger limit and/or the absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
- S Trg > - S Abs	The minus suspect trigger limit value is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute distance limit.	Change the - suspect trigger limit and/or the - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Trg > +S Abs	The plus suspect trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Change the +suspect trigger limit and/or the +suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject trigger distance limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect trigger distance limit.	Change the +reject trigger limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect trigger distance limit is equal or less than the minus reject trigger distance limit.	Change the +suspect trigger limit or - reject trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject trigger distance limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect trigger distance limit.	Change the +reject trigger limit or +suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject trigger distance limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect trigger distance limit.	Change the - reject trigger limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Trg Limit Crossed	The reject limits for trigger distance that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject trigger distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Trg Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for trigger distance that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect trigger distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg Force Conflict	The trigger force is equal to or greater than the plus suspect weld force limit.	Change the trigger force and/or the +suspect weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Trg Force Conflict	The trigger force is equal to or greater than the plus reject weld force limit.	Change the trigger force and/or the +reject weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
- R Trg >- R Abs	The reject lower limit you have set for trigger is less than the lower limit you have set for absolute distance.	Change the reject limits for trigger distance and/or the limits for the absolute distance.
+R Trg >+R Abs	The reject upper limit you have set for trigger is greater than the upper limit you have set for absolute distance.	Change the reject limits for trigger distance and/or the limits you have set for absolute distance.
- S Trg > - S Abs	The suspect lower limit you have set for trigger is less than the lower limit you have set for absolute distance.	Change the suspect limits for trigger distance and/or the limits you have set for absolute distance.
+S Trg > +S Abs	The suspect upper limit you have set for trigger is greater than the upper limit you have set for absolute distance.	Change the suspect limits for trigger distance and/or the limits you have set for absolute distance.
- S Trg > +S Abs	The minus suspect trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Change the - suspect trigger limit and/or the +suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Trg > - S Abs	The plus suspect trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Change the +suspect trigger limit and/or the - suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
- S Trg > Abs	The minus suspect trigger limit is greater than or equal to the absolute distance.	Change the - suspect trigger limit and/or the absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
- S Trg > - S Abs	The minus suspect trigger limit value is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute distance limit.	Change the - suspect trigger limit and/or the - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Trg > +S Abs	The plus suspect trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Change the +suspect trigger limit and/or the +suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Trg S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject trigger distance limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect trigger distance limit.	Change the +reject trigger limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg S/R Limit Cross	The plus suspect trigger distance limit is equal or less than the minus reject trigger distance limit.	Change the +suspect trigger limit or - reject trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg S/R Limit Cross	The plus reject trigger distance limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect trigger distance limit.	Change the +reject trigger limit or +suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg S/R Limit Cross	The minus reject trigger distance limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect trigger distance limit.	Change the - reject trigger limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Trg Limit Crossed	The reject limits for trigger distance that you have entered are reversed.	Change the reject trigger distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+ - Trg Limit Crossed	The suspect limits for trigger distance that you have entered are reversed.	Change the suspect trigger distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg Force Conflict	The trigger force is equal to or greater than the plus suspect weld force limit.	Change the trigger force and/or the +suspect weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
Trg Force Conflict	The trigger force is equal to or greater than the plus reject weld force limit.	Change the trigger force and/or the +reject weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
- R Trg >- R Abs	The reject lower limit you have set for trigger is less than the lower limit you have set for absolute distance.	Change the reject limits for trigger distance and/or the limits for the absolute distance.
+R Trg >+R Abs	The reject upper limit you have set for trigger is greater than the upper limit you have set for absolute distance.	Change the reject limits for trigger distance and/or the limits you have set for absolute distance.
- S Trg > - S Abs	The suspect lower limit you have set for trigger is less than the lower limit you have set for absolute distance.	Change the suspect limits for trigger distance and/or the limits you have set for absolute distance.

Table 7.11 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

Display Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
+S Trg > +S Abs	The suspect upper limit you have set for trigger is greater than the upper limit you have set for absolute distance.	Change the suspect limits for trigger distance and/or the limits you have set for absolute distance.
- S Trg > +S Abs	The minus suspect trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Change the - suspect trigger limit and/or the +suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.
+S Trg > - S Abs	The plus suspect trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit.	Change the +suspect trigger limit and/or the - suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu.

7.5.7 Overload Alarms

You encounter an overload alarm when your ultrasonic power supply has overloaded. The specific overload that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display or your printer.

The following table details the overload alarms that you can encounter on the 2000X Power Supply. The message on the display panel of the Power Supply is shown in the first column, with the more detailed message that you can print shown in the second column. The third and fourth columns indicate what condition led to the alarm and the corrective action you should take.

If you are using a Digital Power Supply, frequency, phase, current and voltage information is also available for each of the overload alarms listed in Table 7.12 Overload Alarms.

Table 7.12 Overload Alarms

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Afterburst Overload	Afterburst Overload	An overload occurred during afterburst. An overload occurred during afterburst. The @ Time and frequency (Freq Chg) is from the start of afterburst. Peak power is at the time of the overload.	Check the stack. Repair/Replace the Power Supply Module.

Table 7.12 Overload Alarms

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Energy Braking Overload	Energy Braking Overload	UPS overload was detected in hold state. Alarm is called 'Energy Braking' because it could be caused by power supply overload during Energy Braking state, but the state is designed to ignore overloads.	Turn off Energy Braking, and call for application assistance.
Pretrigger Overload	Pretrigger Overload	The @Time is from start of pretrigger, the frequency and peak power is at the time of the overload.	Check the stack. Repair/Replace the Power Supply Module.
Post Weld Seek O/L	Post Weld Seek Overload	An overload occurred during post weld seek. The @ Time and frequency change (Freq chg) are from the start of seek. The peak power is at the time of the overload.	Check the stack. Repair/Replace the Power Supply Module.
Weld O/L	Weld Overload	The ultrasonic power supply was overloaded during the weld cycle. The @ Time and frequency change (Freq Chg) are from trigger. Peak power is at the time of the overload.	Check the Peak Power reading in Weld Results. If Peak Power is above 100%, reduce your amplitude and/or force settings.
Seek Overload	Seek Overload	The ultrasonic power supply was overloaded during the seek cycle at power up.	Check the stack. Repair/Replace the Power Supply Module. For digital UPS only, check that the stack is properly attached and the RF cable is hooked up.

Table 7.12 Overload Alarms

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/Cause	Corrective Action
Test Overload	Test Overload	The ultrasonic power supply was overloaded during the test cycle. Pressing Test will clear the overload before the power supply goes into test mode. A new cycle can't be run until reset is pressed, even though test can be pressed again.	Check the stack. Repair/Replace the Power Supply Module. For digital UPS only, check that the stack is properly attached and the RF cable is hooked up.

7.5.8 Note Alarms

In addition to the previously described alarms there are several Note alarms that the Controls can issue to alert you that an alarm is imminent, or that the cycle ran with authorized modifications.

The following table details the Note alarms you can encounter on the 2000X Power Supply. The message on the display panel of the Power Supply is shown in the first column; the detailed message you can print is in the second column. The third and fourth columns indicate the condition that led to the alarm and the corrective action you should take.

Table 7.13 Note Alarms

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Absolute Cutoff	Absolute Distance Cutoff	The absolute cutoff distance that you requested has been reached.	Manually inspect the part. If, with acceptable parts, you repeatedly get this alarm, reset your Absolute cutoff.
Act Clr Not Reached	Actuator Clear Distance Not Reached	The actual absolute distance reached during the weld cycle did not reach the Actuator clear distance that you set.	Using Horn Down to obtain size and distance readings, reset your Actuator Clear Distance to an obtainable value.
Act Recal Suggested	For optimum performance re calibrate your Actuator	A preset has been loaded and calibration should be run.	Calibrate Actuator through Note menu, or calibrate from the Main Menu.

Table 7.13 Note Alarms

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Absolute Cutoff	Absolute Distance Cutoff	The absolute cutoff distance that you requested has been reached.	Manually inspect the part. If, with acceptable parts, you repeatedly get this alarm, reset your Absolute cutoff.
Act Clr Not Reached	Actuator Clear Distance Not Reached	The actual absolute distance reached during the weld cycle did not reach the Actuator clear distance that you set.	Using Horn Down to obtain size and distance readings, reset your Actuator Clear Distance to an obtainable value.
Act Recal Suggested	For optimum performance re calibrate your Actuator	A preset has been loaded and calibration should be run.	Calibrate Actuator through Note menu, or calibrate from the Main Menu.
Act Recal Suggested	Act Recal Suggested	A preset has been loaded and calibration should be run.	Additional information will not be available if the carriage is not at upper limit, the actuator Novram has failed or the palm buttons are still pressed. This note will be disabled when the preset has been recalled via external preset selection, through the host or sequencing.
Collapse Cutoff	Collapse Cutoff	The collapse cutoff distance you requested has been reached.	Manually inspect the part. If you repeatedly get this alarm with acceptable parts, reset your collapse cutoff.
Max Energy Reached	Energy Compensation Maximum Energy Reached	The maximum energy compensation value has been reached.	None. This is only a notice that an adaptive control feature that you programmed is in use.
Print Buffer	[No message sent to printer.]	The printer buffer is at 80% of capacity. Cycle rate will slow to allow data to print.	Slow the cycle rate or request less printing.

Table 7.13 Note Alarms

Display Message	Printer Message	Alarm Condition/ Cause	Corrective Action
Collapse Cutoff	Collapse Cutoff	The collapse cutoff distance you requested has been reached.	Manually inspect the part. If you repeatedly get this alarm with acceptable parts, reset your collapse cutoff.
Max Energy Reached	Energy Compensation Maximum Energy Reached	The maximum energy compensation value has been reached.	None. This is only a notice that an adaptive control feature that you programmed is in use.
Print Buffer	[No message sent to printer.]	The printer buffer is at 80% of capacity. Cycle rate will slow to allow data to print.	Slow the cycle rate or request less printing.
Sonics Disabled	Ultrasonics Disabled by user input	A complete weld cycle has been run but the ultrasonics were disabled by a user defined input.	Remove 24V from Sonics Disable input; undefine Sonics Disable input pin.
Time Extended	Weld Time was Extended for Energy Compensation	Weld time has been ex-ended up to 50% for energy compensation. This alarm occurs in Time Mode only.	None. This is only a notice that an adaptive control feature that you programmed is in use.
Time Extended	Weld Time was Extended for Energy Compensation	Weld time has been ex-ended up to 50% for energy compensation. This alarm occurs in Time Mode only.	None. This is only a notice that an adaptive control feature that you programmed is in use.
USB Memory Nearly Full	USB Memory Nearly Full	The USB memory stick is over 98% full. At the current rate of storing, this is enough room for less than 100 welds. When full the welder will stop cycling.	Replace USB memory stick.

7.6 Service Events

WARNING	
	Service events should be performed only by qualified individuals. The potential for injury or death exists, as well as that for damage to the equipment (which can include loss of product warranty) or loss of valuable setup information for your application. When servicing the system, the service person(s) can have a need for certain conventional hand tools, and you might need to have the following information for testing or returning the system to service.

7.6.1 Required Tools

Special tools for the ultrasonic Converter, such as spanner wrenches, are provided with your system. You might also need the following hand tools or service tools:

- Six-inch or longer Phillips-head screwdriver with a magnetic tip or screw starter
- Good-quality multi-meter for continuity, AC and DC voltages, and resistance, with insulated test probes

7.6.2 Voltage Test Points

Remove the cover and pivot the DC Power Supply. See 7.7.6 DC Power Supply.

Table 7.14 Voltage Test Points

DC Power Supply
TB2-1 to TB2-4 = +12vdc
TB2-2 to TB2-4 = – 12vdc
TB2-3 to TB2-4 = +24vdc
TB2-7 to TB2-6 = +5vdc

7.6.3 Cold Start Procedures

The Power Supply internal memory stores the system default settings and the parameters that you set. It also provides temporary storage to support the Power Supply internal functions. A cold start clears the Weld Setup Menu values and restores them to original factory defaults. It is not necessary to perform a cold start during normal operation and servicing, but you might find a cold start helpful when:

- You suspect the system is not operating properly
- You want to make a new setup

Some system memory locations and parameters, such as internal power supply history and serial number information, printer type and printer setup, will not be cleared by these Cold Start procedures.

NOTICE	
	Using the Cold Start procedures will erase your Setup parameters. Be sure you have a record of your setup if you want to retain it. Your settings can be printed if you use the optional printer or you can save them to a preset.

Performing a Cold Start

Table 7.15 Performing a Cold Start

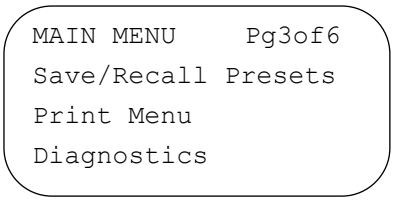
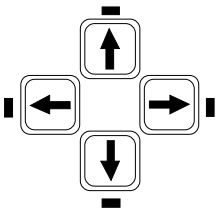
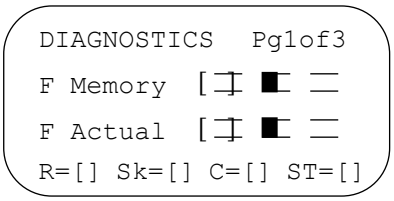
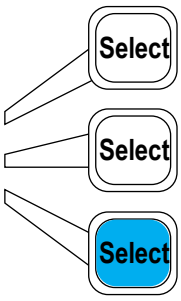
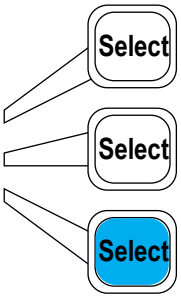
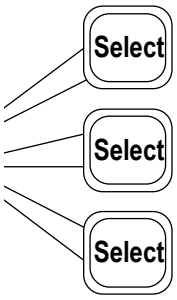
Take this action	To get this result	Key
From the **Main Menu**, scroll down until you see **Diagnostics**. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Diagnostics**.		
You will see the **DIAGNOSTICS** submenu.		

Table 7.15 Performing a Cold Start

Take this action	To get this result	Key
Use the down arrow key to scroll downward through the Diagnostics menu until you see **Cold Start**.	DIAGNOSTICS Pg1of3 Digital Tune> Horn Scan Cold Start	
Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **Cold Start**.	DIAGNOSTICS Pg3of3 Digital Tune> Horn Scan Cold Start	
You will see the **COLD START** submenu. Press the **Select** key that corresponds to **OK**. The display returns to the **Weld Setup menu** when the Cold Start is complete.	COLD START Pg1of1 This will Clear your Present Setup. OK Cancel	

7.7 Parts Replacement

CAUTION	
	The 2000X Power Supply contains components that can be degraded or damaged by electrostatic discharge. Always use a Grounded Wriststrap and use a grounded work area when handling or servicing the 2000X Power Supply. In the following paragraphs, you are provided instructions on removing and replacing components. Before you begin to disassemble any parts of the Power Supply, ensure that the Power Supply is turned off, and the main power is disconnected. After the Power Supply cover is removed, wait at least two minutes to allow capacitors to discharge. When necessary, refer to Figure 7.3 Exploded View of all 2000 Modules and Figure 7.4 Front Panel, Exploded Parts View to help you with these procedures.

The 2000X Power Supply is designed for a long service life. In the event the system malfunctions, many of the internal components (Modules) are replaceable as a unit. If a particular module has failed, it should be replaced or repaired at a Branson Depot Facility.

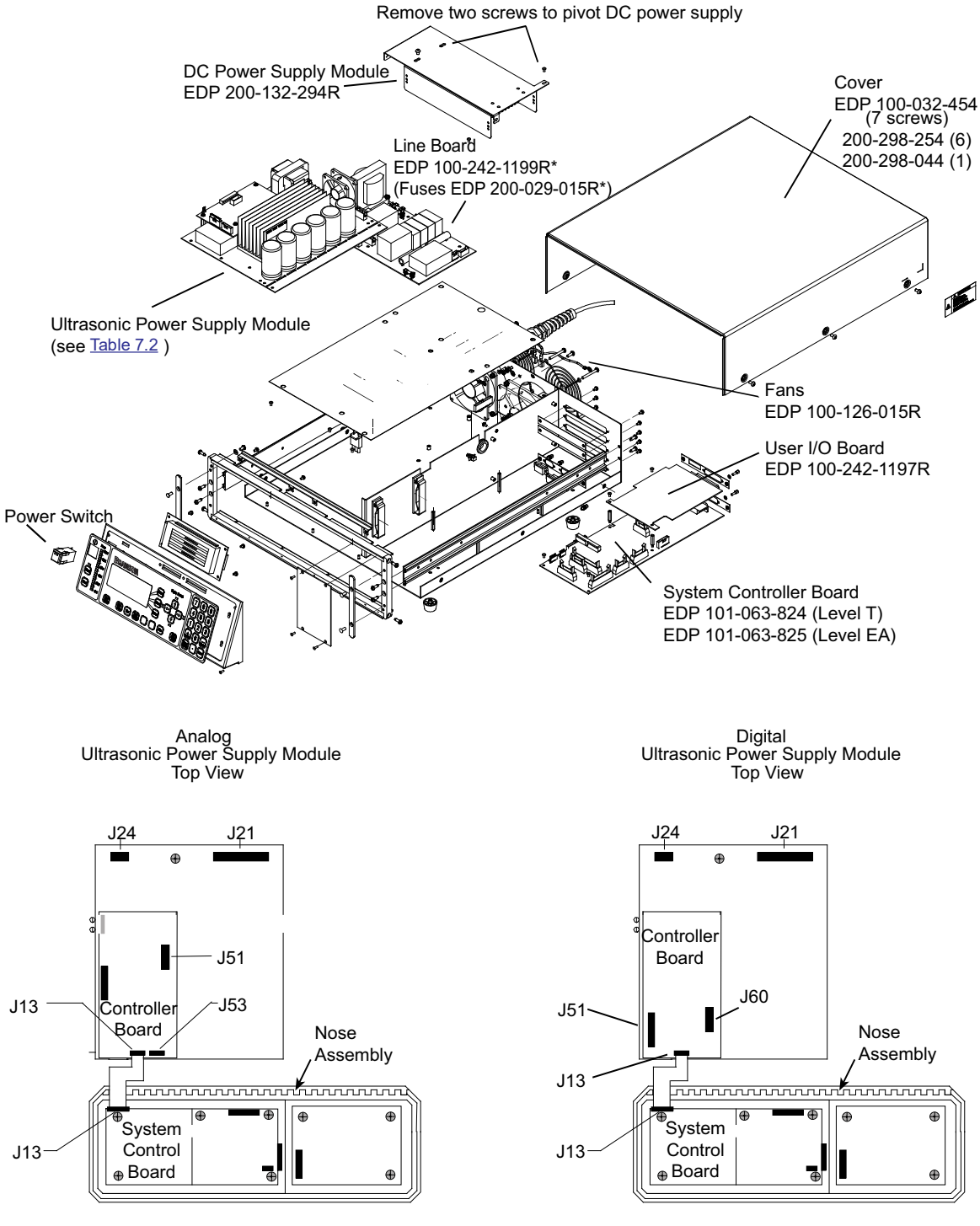
The 2000 system is designed with an extensive Alarms Message system. Refer to the list of error messages to assist your troubleshooting. These error codes are described in 7.4 Troubleshooting.

The following parts are replaceable. Refer to the following exploded view of the Power Supply to see the location of each of these components or modules.

7.7.1 Power Supply Cover

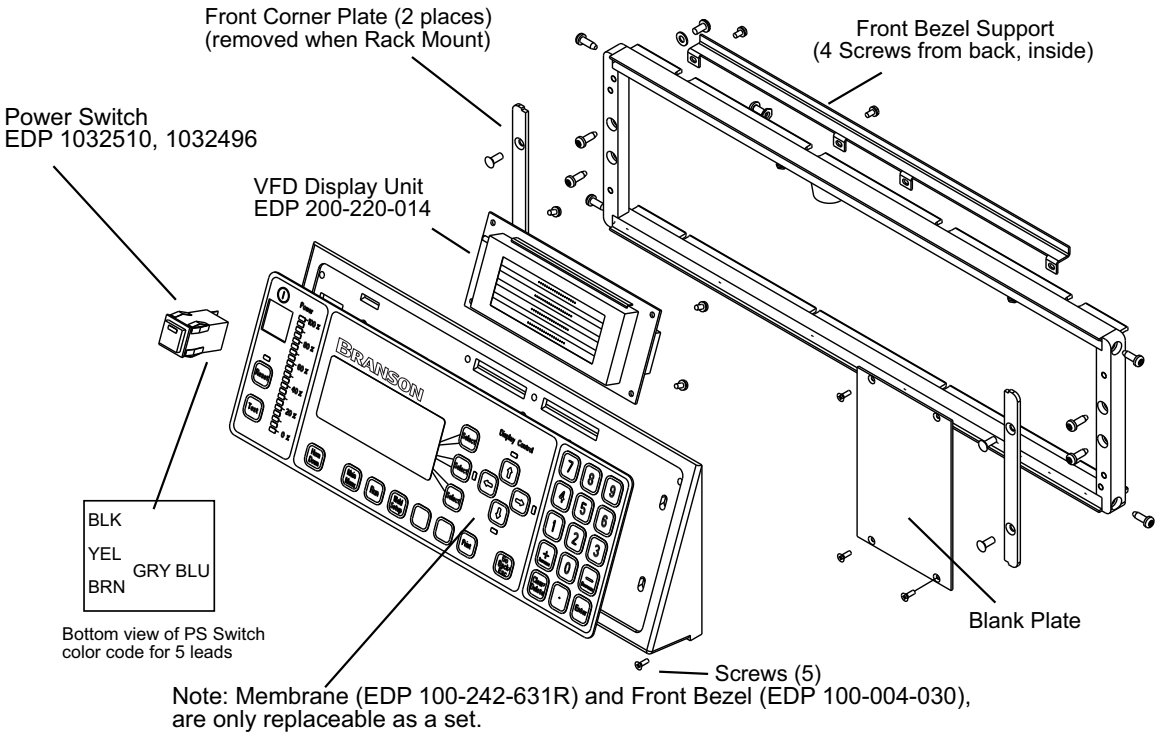
The Cover is held in place with seven screws, three on each side of the case and one on the rear. Lift the rear of the cover up to remove it. The Cover must be in place when the system is operating due to fan-forced ventilation design. See Figure 7.3 Exploded View of all 2000 Modules for a view of the Cover.

Figure 7.3 Exploded View of all 2000 Modules



*4KW units use line board 100-242-1230R with Fuses 200-049-146R

Figure 7.4 Front Panel, Exploded Parts View



7.7.2 Circuit Boards and Modules

Replaceable Modules are shown in Figure 7.3 Exploded View of all 2000 Modules. Ribbon cables and connectors are unique and keyed to prevent the misconnection of an appropriate connector in a location within the Power Supply case. Fans use identical wiring harnesses, with one tying back the 'extra' lead length.

Make note of any wiring paths if you are removing a module, before you disassemble. In some cases, there are several possible paths, but one preferred location. Be especially careful with harnesses and wires that go between the two portions of the case, as they can be pinched by the metal case if mis-routed.

7.7.3 Power Switch and Lamp

The Power Switch with its integral lamp is a field-replaceable component. It uses a 5-conductor wiring harness. The switch leads are depicted, by color code, in Figure 7.4 Front Panel, Exploded Parts View, looking at the bottom of the switch. To replace the switch, disconnect power and push the switch out from the rear of the front bezel assembly. Disconnect the wires and, in reverse order, reinstall the new switch with the integral lamp toward the top side.

7.7.4 Front Panel Membrane and VFD Display

The Front Panel Membrane and Bezel are supplied as a single assembly.

The VFD Display is removable from the back of the Bezel/Membrane unit and can be replaced separately. You remove the Front Bezel by removing the four screws from the Bezel Support, and then lifting the Bezel up and out.

To remove the VFD Display, take the following steps

Table 7.16 Removing the VDF Display

Step	Action
1	Turn off the Power Supply. Unplug the main power.
2	Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.
3	Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000X cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover.
4	Using a #1 Philips screwdriver, loosen, from inside the unit, the 4 screws on the Front Bezel Support.
5	Using a #1 Philips screwdriver, remove 5 screws from the Front Bezel (bottom front).
6	Disconnect the membrane connectors from the System Controller Board.
7	Disconnect the cable clamps.
8	Disconnect the leads from the Power Switch Assembly.
9	Disconnect J36 on the System Controller Board.
10	Disconnect the VFD ground strap.
11	Lift the front panel up and out.
12	Tip the Front Bezel forward.
13	Disconnect the cable from the VFD board.
14	Remove 4 screws from the VFD board.
15	Remove the VFD board.

To reinstall the VFD Board, reverse the removal procedures.

NOTICE	
	Be sure the VFD is installed in its original orientation. When reinstalling and dressing the membrane connectors, do the longest one first.

7.7.5 Power Supply Module

The ultrasonic Power Supply Module is affixed to the bottom of the power supply box with four screws through the bottom board. To remove the Power Supply Module, perform the following steps listed in Table 7.17 Removing the Power Supply Module.

CAUTION	
	Transfer the DIP switch settings from the original module to the new module. If installing a 1.1kw or 800w Power Supply Module into a 117 vac Power Supply, move the 115/230 jumper to the 115 position.

To remove the Power Supply Module, take the following steps

Table 7.17 Removing the Power Supply Module

Step	Action
1	Turn off the Power Supply.
2	Unplug the main power.
3	Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.
4	Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000X cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover.
5	Remove the nose assembly as shown in Figure 7.4 Front Panel, Exploded Parts View.
6	Disconnect P13, P51, and P53 (analog module), or P60 (digital module) from controller board as shown in Figure 7.3 Exploded View of all 2000 Modules.
7	Disconnect P21 and P24 from the lower board as shown in Figure 7.3 Exploded View of all 2000 Modules.
8	Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove retaining screws.
9	Slide the module out of the Power Supply.

To reinstall the DC Power Supply, reverse the removal procedure.

7.7.6 DC Power Supply

The DC Power Supply is mounted to the rear of the Power Supply case. It is mounted so it will swivel up to service the DC Power Supply, Line Board, and fuses. See Figure 7.3 Exploded View of all 2000 Modules.

To remove the DC Power Supply, take the following steps

Table 7.18 Removing the DC Power Supply

Step	Action
1	Turn off the Power Supply.
2	Unplug the main power.
3	Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.
4	Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000X cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover.
5	Using a #1 Philips screwdriver, on the top of the DC Power Supply, remove 1 rear screw.
6	Using a #1 Philips screwdriver, on the left side of the DC Power Supply, remove the rear screw.
7	Rotate the DC Power Supply up to allow you access to connectors.
8	Disconnect the 5-pin connector (TB1).
9	Disconnect the 16-pin connector (TB2).
10	Disconnect pin 5 (red) and pin 6 (black) noting the wire colors.
11	On the top of the DC Power Supply, remove 4 screws.
12	Remove the DC Power Supply.

To reinstall the DC Power Supply, reverse the removal procedure.

NOTICE	
	When reconnecting wires, observe the color coding that you previously noted. When installing the connectors, to TB1 and TB2, ensure the wires from the connectors are turned toward the outside of the unit.

7.7.7 User I/O Board

The User I/O Board is the short interface board. It is mounted to the System Controller Board on standoffs, and is connected to the rear of the Power Supply case by its end panel.

To remove the User I/O Board, take the following steps

Table 7.19 Removing the User I/O Board

Step	Action
1	Turn off the Power Supply.
2	Unplug the main power.
3	Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.
4	Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000X cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover.
5	Disconnect J41.
6	Using a #1 Philips screwdriver, remove the 2 end panel screws.
7	Using a #1 Philips screwdriver, remove the 2 internal (M3) mounting screws.
8	Remove the User I/O board.
9	If the new User I/O Board does not have rear mounting plate, transfer it from the old board.

To reinstall the User I/O Board, reverse the removal procedures.

7.7.8 Battery for Backup RAM (BBRAM)

NOTICE	
	When the battery is worn out, dispose it under the ordinance of each local government.

To remove and replace the BBRAM battery, take the following steps

Table 7.20 Removing and Replacing the BBRAM battery

Step	Action
1	Turn off the Power Supply. Unplug the main power.
2	Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.
3	Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000X cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover.
4	Remove and replace the battery (CR2032), located on the controller board.
5	Replace cover and screws. Plug in main power and turn on the Power Supply.

7.7.9 System Controller Board

To remove the System Controller Board, take the following steps

Table 7.21 Removing the System Controller Board

Step	Action
1	Print out or record all parameters from your weld setup.
2	Turn the Power Supply off. Disconnect it from Main power. Wait at least 5 minutes.
3	Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000X cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear).
4	Observe all ESD precautions (grounding strap).
5	Remove the User I/O board. See 7.7.7 User I/O Board.
6	Remove all cables connected to the system controller. Note the path of the cable routing, and be careful that you do not cross the flexible transparent cable.
7	Remove all screws and standoffs that hold the System Controller in the chassis, including the 2 (M3) screws in the back panel.
CAUTION Do not remove the 2 screws that secure the back panel plate to the D shell connector. If this is a board upgrade, the new level designation is located on the replacement assembly. If there still exists a need to remove the connector, **do not apply a torque greater than 4 in/lbs to the screws when reassembling.**	
8	Remove the System Controller Board.

To reinstall the System Controller Board, reverse the removal procedures and perform a Cold Start.

CAUTION	
	If this is a board upgrade, make certain to use the appropriate longer length standoffs to preclude interference problems.

NOTICE	
	You can verify the software version of your power supply either viewing it in the System Information menu, or by removing the power supply cover and reading the version number on the flash (ICs U53, U54, U55 and U56) located on the Controller Board.

CAUTION	
	Do not rely on the paper label for IC orientation.

The triangle on the IC socket should be directly under the raised dot on the IC. The socket and IC also have a truncated corner to aid in alignment. The raised dot may also be located on the beveled surface of the IC.

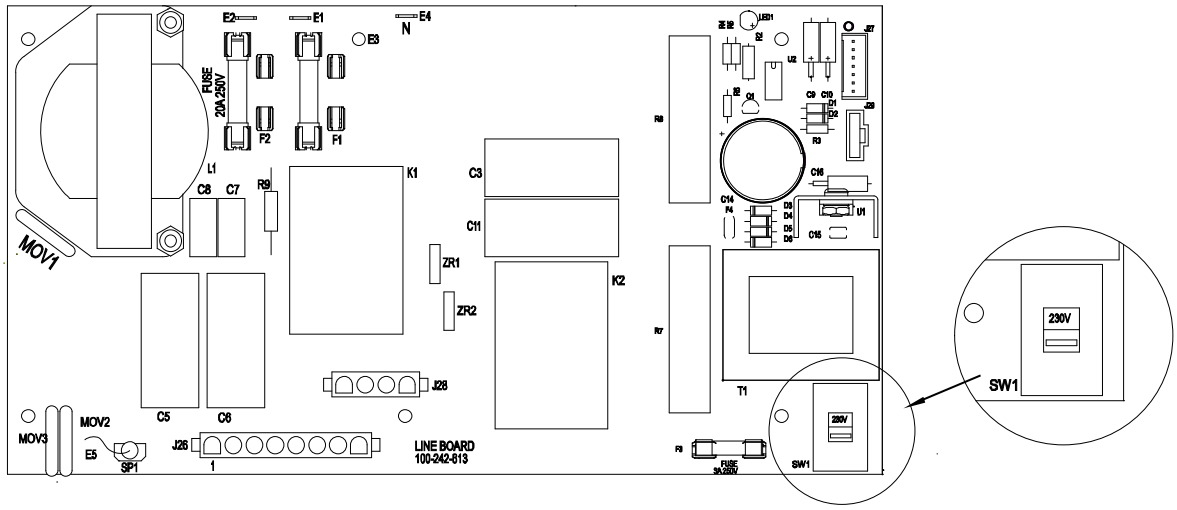
Figure 7.5 Location and Orientation of U53, U54, U55, and U56

For installation information, please contact Branson Product Support (203.796.0400, extensions 373 or 355) or your local Branson Representative.

7.7.10 Line Board

CAUTION	
	Refer to Figure 7.6 below to verify the voltage selector switch is configured properly for your intended operating voltage.

Figure 7.6 Lineboard EDP 100-242-1199R (100-242-1230R for 4kW Units)



To remove the Line Board, take the following steps

Table 7.22 Removing the Line Board

Step	Action
1	Turn off the Power Supply.
2	Unplug the main power.
3	Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.
4	Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000X cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover.
5	Rotate the DC Power Supply up to allow you access to the Line Board. See 7.7.6 DC Power Supply.
6	Disconnect J26, J27, J28, and J29.
7	For 120 V systems, disconnect line labeled E1 and neutral labeled E4 or N. For 220 V systems, disconnect lines labeled E1 and E2. Note that the brown lead is the hot lead.
8	Remove 5 M3 screws (Philips) and 1 ground screw (common head).
9	Lift out the line board.

To reinstall the Line Board, reverse the removal procedures.

CAUTION	
	When reconnecting wires, observe the color coding that you previously noted and the connections noted in step 5 above.

7.7.11 Line Fuses

To remove and replace the Line Fuses, take the following steps

Table 7.23 Removing and Replacing the Line Fuses

Step	Action
1	Turn off the Power Supply.
2	Unplug the main power.
3	Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.
4	Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000X cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover.
5	Rotate the DC Power Supply up to allow you access to the Line Board. See 7.7.6 DC Power Supply.
6	Remove and replace the line fuse(s) located on the Line Board.

Reassemble the Power Supply by reversing the above procedures.

7.7.12 Cooling Fans

To remove a Cooling Fan, take the following steps

Table 7.24 Removing a Cooling Fan

Step	Action
1	Turn off the Power Supply.
2	Unplug the main power.
3	Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.
4	Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000X cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover.
5	Rotate the DC Power Supply up to allow you access to the Fans. See 7.7.6 DC Power Supply.
6	Cut the tie-wraps from the fan wiring.
7	Disconnect the electrical connector(s).
8	Remove the 4 fan mounting screws and nuts.
9	Remove the fan and shield.

To reinstall the a Cooling Fan, reverse the removal procedures while observing the direction of air flow.

NOTICE	
	Be sure that you reinstall the fan shields on the back of the Power Supply.

Appendix A: Compatible Printers

A.1 General

The 2000 series Power Supply is designed to work with the printers listed below.

Table A.1 Compatible Printers

Manufacturer	Model No.		
Epson	LQ-570	FX-980	Stylus 900
Okidata	5340HE	320 Turbo	520 (see note)
Panasonic	1180	1150	
H-P	610C	540	600

For setup, refer to owner manuals for all printers listed except the Okidata 520. For the OKI 520, you must select Epson FX from the printer setup menu in order to interface properly with the power supply. (Other choices that appear are IBM PPR and ML.)

NOTICE	
	If you purchase your Okidata 520 printer from Branson, the following settings are factory set. If you purchase it from another vendor, you need to verify and/or set up the printer. Refer to the printer manual and 6.6 Printing.

Table A.2 Okidata 520 Printer Settings

Printer Control	Emulation Mode	Epson FX
Font	Print Mode	Utility
Font	Pitch	12 CPI
Font	Proportional Spacing	No
Font	Style	Normal
Font	Size	Single
Symbol Sets	Character Set	Set I
Symbol Sets	Language Set	American
Symbol Sets	Zero Character	Slashed
Symbol Sets	Code Page	USA
Rear Feed	Line Spacing	8 LPI
Rear Feed	Form Tear-Off	Off
Rear Feed	Skip Over Perforation	No

Table A.2 Okidata 520 Printer Settings

Printer Control	Emulation Mode	Epson FX
Rear Feed	Page Length	11″
Rear Feed	Gap Control	Auto Gap
Bottom Feed	Line Spacing	8 LPI
Bottom Feed	Form Tear-Off	Off
Bottom Feed	Skip Over Perforation	No
Bottom Feed	Page Length	11″
Bottom Feed	Gap Control	Auto Gap
Top Feed	Line Spacing	8 LPI
Top Feed	Bottom Margin	Valid
Top Feed	Page Length	11″
Top Feed	Gap Control	Auto Gap
Top Feed	Wait Time	1 second
Top Feed	Page Length Control	by Actual Page Length
Set-Up	Graphics	Bi-Directional
Set-Up	Receive Buffer Size	64K
Set-Up	Paper Out Override	No
Set-Up	Print Registration	0
Set-Up	Operator Panel Function	Limited Operation
Set-Up	Reset Inhibit	No
Set-Up	Print Suppress Effective	Yes
Set-Up	Auto LF	No
Set-Up	Time Out Print	Valid
Set-Up	Auto Select	No
Set-Up	Printhead Gap Adjust	0
Parallel I/F	I-Prime	Buffer Clear
Parallel I/F	Pin 18	Open
Parallel I/F	Auto Feed XT	Invalid

Appendix B: Automation

This appendix supports automation Interface features on 2000 Series power supplies.

NOTICE	
	Refer to the Branson Automation Guide (EDP 100-214-273) for additional information about selection and use of features available to set up an automated ultrasonic welding process.

B.1 FAQ: 2000 SERIES AUTOMATION

Q. *What is the best tip for automating a Branson welder?*

A. Perhaps the best advice is to provide a "manual jog" function where the welder can be cycled by the system control panel without indexing the whole machine. The time saved debugging, optimizing, calibrating and servicing the welder over it's lifetime will pay-back to the end-user and machine builder many times the cost of input hardware and code.

Q. *What are the electrical characteristics of the input/output lines in the START and USER I/O cables?*

A. They are rated at 10ma. 24Vdc. This is compatible with most PLCs available.

Q. *Can't I use 120 volt AC LOGIC?*

A. Not directly. Use relays to interface between the 2 logic levels. Note: use relays with low-power requirement coils, and use back biased diodes to suppress induced back EMF.

Q. *But you forgot about the RELAY outputs in your diagrams.*

A. They are SOLID STATE relays, and can safely withstand 40 V ac 250 ma, or 24 V dc, 250 ma. So they may be suited better to drive relays, if required to interface to relay coils.

Q. *Why do you have so many pins in the USER I/O cable?*

A. We combined the alarm and advanced feature connector outputs from the 900 Series with 2000 Series additions to provide maximum features and flexibility while retaining most feature backward compatibility.

Q. *What do I do with the UNUSED PINS?*

A. You should electrically isolate each unused pin so that shorts to ground and other outputs are avoided. This could possibly damage the USER I/O board and other system components.

Q. *Do I ground the shields on the START and USER I/O cables?*

A. No; leave the shields from the cables isolated and cut-back so they do *not* touch ground: this prevents ground loop interference from occurring.

Q. *Should I ground the RETURN lines in the START and USER I/O cables?*

A. If required: this generally is not a problem. If problems occur, see "OTHER THAN 24 VOLTS"

Q. *What are those SQUARE PLASTIC HOUSINGS on the cables?*

A. They are ferrites that are used to reduce crosstalk and interference from entering the system. DO NOT remove them.

Q. *How LONG can I run the CABLES?*

A. Cable sets are available in 8, 15, 25, and on special order 50-foot lengths. Contact Branson Product Support or Customer Service if you have special needs.

Q. *Can I run the Branson welder cables in a WIRING TROUGH with other system cables?*

A. Generally yes. But it would be best to avoid other noise trouble source cables or wiring.

Q. *What other system cables might cause a NOISE TROUBLE SOURCE?*

A. Avoid wiring of devices such as solenoids, large relays, motors, or anything that has the potential of large inductive currents. Digital devices may also create broad-spectrum noise. Generally, all automation controls can be noise generators.

Q. *Why do you require the READY signal to be monitored by the system PLC?*

A. The welder mandatory requirements dictate the unit be READY or else the unit will DISREGARD any start command.

Q. *Why can't I use a SINGLE START input to signal the welder?*

A. This is not preferable as you are running the signals in parallel, and cable capacitance can reduce the noise immunity designed into the controls. The dual inputs are required for the use of manual start switches, and the necessary circuit needs of an actuator welder utilizing solenoid valve control.

Q. *Why must I MAINTAIN THE START SIGNAL?*

A. This is the way the built-in safety circuits operate. Also, the vast library of error-detection firmware code is based on these same requirements: it will simplify automation system/PLC/welder debugging during system integration. Watch for the PB RELEASE signal, then you can release the START SIGNAL

Q. *My machine is CAM driven. Do I need to do anything special?*

A. For one thing, monitor the GENERAL ALARM output and send a RESET as soon as the alarm is received. This will allow the power supply to recover from a fault, and go to READY as soon as possible. Otherwise the next weld may be missed if the system is not reset. Also, see WITHOUT A BRANSON ACTUATOR below.

Q. *I'm going to use a welder station WITHOUT A BRANSON ACTUATOR. Do I need to use all those cables?*

A. If you only need a "stack" (converter/booster/horn) rather than a full featured actuator, you can use the USER I/O cable. This is a feature available in Version 8.05 operating system. An E-Stop jumper is required to connect Pin 32 (rtn) to pin 13 (source) at J7 on the actuator.

Q. *Does it wire up the same way?*

A. The USER I/O inputs wire the same way, and the start only needs a SINGLE START input from any available USER I/O input.

Q. *But you said you need DUAL START Inputs?*

A. Yes, when using a solenoid valve equipped actuator. But in this case we are only controlling ultrasonics. For this function a SINGLE START input works fine.

Q. *What can I do to make sure I run at MAXIMUM CYCLE RATE for my machine?*

A. You can:

RESET immediately after an GENERAL ALARM output

RELEASE the DUAL START inputs immediately after an GENERAL ALARM output

RELEASE the DUAL START inputs immediately after sensing PB RELEASE output

If you have a 2000d model: and if the stroke length is more than about 0.5 inches, turn on the ACTUATOR CLEAR function and set the distance value to whatever is required to clear the welded workpiece. Use the ACTUATOR CLEAR output to let your PLC index the material handling, rather than wait for the welder to become READY.

Never run in an open-loop mode, if possible. Fixed timing can be too short should a fault occur, or may be longer in time than is necessary.

Q. *Do all models run at the same CYCLE RATE?*

A. See above.

Q. *Are there any special requirements for operation with the ACTUATOR UP-SIDE DOWN?*

A. Always let Branson know when you plan to run in this manner. Model-specific advice will be provided.

Q. *Are there any special requirements for operation with the ACTUATOR HORIZONTAL?*

A. Always let Branson know when you plan to run in this manner. Model-specific advice will be provided.

Q. *How does EMERGENCY STOP work?*

A. Keep in mind that it is meant for EMERGENCY usage only, not for normal head retraction functions. Additional time is allotted for checking the welders' hardware and system status after an EMERGENCY STOP. Note: A front panel or external signal Reset is required after an Emergency Stop to reinitialize the welder. Also see CYCLE ABORT below.

Q. *So the CYCLE ABORT function is the preferred fast welder head retraction function?*

A. Yes. It does not require the additional time that is allotted for checking the welders' hardware and system status that is used for EMERGENCY STOP.

Q. *How does RESET work? Can I hold it on?*

A. RESET is only acted upon *after* a GENERAL ALARM. Do *not* hold it in the RESET state as it will be ignored.

Q. *My system logic uses some value OTHER THAN 24 VOLTS. What do I do?*

A. A set of dipswitches are provided on the rear panel slot that contains the USER I/O connector. Setting the switches to OFF (open) converts the 24volt USER I/O to OPEN COLLECTOR configuration. The same voltage/current spec.'s apply when in this mode. (24 volt dc, 25ma max.) Use them to control devices that have outputs compatible to your requirements.

Q. *Are there any environmental conditions to be concerned about?*

A. Any electrical/electronic equipment does not work well in: high humidity (*condensing*) conditions: also in dusty areas, in particular *conductive dust* (carbon granule or fiber, charcoal, metal particle, etc.)

A Fan Filter Kit with instructions can be factory or customer installed for just ordinary dusty areas.

Always contact your area representative, Branson Product Support or Customer Service should any like conditions or for inquires about explosion-proof requirements.

Q. How much air consumption does the 2000 Series use?

A. 2000 Series products use identical air cylinder sizes as prior models, therefore the air consumption tables from prior series documentation will still apply.

Table B.1 Air Consumption

Air Pressure (PSI)	Cylinder Size			
	1.5	**2**	**2.5**	**3**
10	0.00174	0.00317	0.00490	0.00680
20	0.00243	0.00437	0.00680	0.00960
30	0.00312	0.00557	0.00870	0.01240
40	0.00381	0.00677	0.01060	0.01520
50	0.00450	0.00800	0.01250	0.01800
60	0.00513	0.00930	0.01440	0.02080
70	0.00590	0.01040	0.01630	0.02350
80	0.00660	0.01170	0.01830	0.02670
90	0.00730	0.01300	0.02040	0.02910
100	0.00800	0.01420	0.02230	0.03190

Cubic Feet of air per Minute per inch of stroke length (each direction)

Use the above table to calculate the air used by the air cylinder.

Add 0.034 Cubic foot per Second of actual weld time to account for converter cooling air per weld cycle. (2 CFM)

For example:

3.0 inch aed actuator running at full pressure (100psi) and stroke length (4inches) at a cycle rate of 20 parts per minute = 0.0319 CFM per inch of stroke (from above table) X 8 inches (total stroke is 4 inches down and 4 inches back) equals 0.2552 CFM per stroke. Weld time is 1 second so: 0.034 X 1 equals 0.034 CFM for cooling.

Adding 0.2552 CFM for the cylinder and 0.034 CFM for cooling equals 0.2892 CFM per cycle. Multiply for parts per minute (20) and you get a total of 5.784 CFM.

This would very likely be a worst-case condition any welder could run at.

We would suggest to always use the 100 psi values from the above table to be on the conservative side for sizing airflow, rather than on the actual force values. Still add the same converter cooling values (0.034) as in the prior example.

Appendix C: Alarm Index

This alarm index is an alphabetical list of the alarms that appear on the system display and on printouts. In some instances, the alarm display and alarm printouts (more complete) are slightly different, and therefore are indexed separately as appropriate. All alarm page numbers are hyper-linked to the full description, which describes the cause of the alarm condition and the steps to resolve it.

Appendix D: Manual Revisions

D.1 Manual Revisions

Refer to the following table to look for the appropriate manual revision for your Power Supply depending on the date of manufacture, which is found on a label on the back of the Power Supply.

Table D.1 Revisions of Manual

Revision number of Manual	Power Supply Manufacturing Date	
	From	To
00	January 2020	September 2021
01	October 2021	May 2023
02	August 2023	To date

Figure D.1 Location of the Model Data Label on the back of the Power Supply

Index

C

D

E

F

G

N

O

P

T